# Table of Contents

## Introduction
- About This Manual...........................................7
- Symbols Glossary.............................................7
- Parts and Accessories.....................................7

## At a Glance
- At a Glance........................................................10

## Child Safety
- Child Seats.........................................................19
- Booster Seats..................................................20
- Child Seat Positioning...................................21
- ISOFIX Anchor Points...................................24
- Child Safety Locks..........................................25

## Occupant protection
- Principle of Operation...................................27
- Fastening the seat belts..................................29
- Seat belt height adjustment............................33
- Seat belt reminder............................................33
- Using seat belts during pregnancy....................33
- Disabling the passenger airbag..........................34

## Keys and Remote Controls
- General Information on Radio Frequencies...........36
- Programming the remote control.........................36
- Changing the remote control battery..................36

## Locks
- Locking and Unlocking.......................................39
- Keyless Entry.....................................................43
- Global Opening and Closing................................45

## Engine immobiliser
- Principle of Operation.......................................47
- Coded keys.........................................................47
- Arming the engine immobiliser............................47
- Disarming the engine immobiliser.......................47

## Alarm
- Principle of Operation.......................................48
- Arming the alarm...............................................49
- Disarming the alarm............................................49

## Steering Wheel
- Adjusting the Steering Wheel.............................50
- Audio Control.....................................................50
- Voice Control.....................................................51

## Wipers and Washers
- Windscreen Wipers............................................52
- Autowipers.........................................................52
- Windscreen Washers..........................................53
- Rear Window Wiper and Washers......................53
- Headlamp Washers..........................................54
- Checking the Wiper Blades................................54
- Changing the Wiper Blades.................................54
- Technical Specifications.....................................56

## Lighting
- Lighting Control................................................57
- Autolamps........................................................58
- Front Fog Lamps.................................................58
- Rear Fog Lamps................................................58
- Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/Xenon Headlamps..........................59
- Headlamp Levelling............................................59
- Hazard Warning Flashers....................................59
- Direction Indicators...........................................60
- Cornering Lamps...............................................60
- Interior Lamps....................................................61
- Removing a Headlamp.........................................62
- Changing a Bulb..................................................62
- Bulb Specification Chart......................................69

## Windows and Mirrors
- Power Windows................................................71
Table of Contents

Exterior Mirrors.................................................72
Electric exterior mirrors................................73
Auto-Dimming Mirror....................................74
Blind Spot Monitor........................................74

Instrument Cluster
Gauges................................................................77
Warning Lamps and Indicators.........................79
Audible Warnings and Indicators.......................81

Information Displays
General Information......................................83
Trip Computer................................................89
Personalised Settings...................................89
Information Messages....................................90

Climate Control
Principle of Operation................................100
Air Vents........................................................100
Manual Climate Control............................101
Automatic Climate Control........................103
Heated Windows and Mirrors......................105
Auxiliary Heater.........................................106

Seats
Sitting in the Correct Position.................109
Manual Seats..............................................109
Head Restraints..........................................110
Power Seats...............................................111
Rear Seats..................................................112
Heated Seats..............................................120

Convenience features
Sun Shades.....................................................121
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.......................122
Clock..........................................................122
Cigar Lighter...............................................122
Auxiliary Power Points...............................123
Cup Holders................................................123

Storage compartments................................124
Glasses Holder............................................124
Childminder Mirror...................................125
Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket..................125
USB port.....................................................125
Satellite Navigation Unit Holder...............126
Floor Mats..................................................126

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information...................................127
Ignition Switch............................................127
Steering Wheel Lock................................127
Starting a Petrol Engine..........................128
Starting a Diesel Engine..........................128
Keyless Starting.........................................129
Diesel Particulate Filter.............................130
Switching Off the Engine.........................131
Engine Block Heater................................131

Start-Stop
Principle of Operation.............................133
Using start-stop.......................................133

Eco Mode
Principle of Operation.............................135
Using Eco mode.......................................135

Fuel and Refuelling
Safety Precautions.....................................136
Fuel Quality - Petrol.................................136
Fuel Quality - Diesel.................................136
Catalytic Converter....................................136
Fuel filler flap...........................................137
Refuelling..................................................138
Fuel Consumption.....................................138
Technical Specifications..........................139
## Table of Contents

### Transmission
- Manual Transmission .............................................. 141
- Automatic Transmission ............................................ 141

### Brakes
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 144
- Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes ......................... 144
- Parking Brake ............................................................ 144

### Stability Control
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 145
- Using Stability Control .............................................. 145

### Hill Start Assist
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 146
- Using hill start assist ............................................... 146

### Parking Aids
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 148
- Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid ........ 148
- Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Front and Rear Parking Aid ...... 149

### Active Park Assist
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 152
- Using active park assist ........................................... 152

### Rear view camera
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 155
- Using the Rear View Camera ..................................... 155

### Cruise Control
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 158
- Using Cruise Control ............................................... 158

### Speed Limiter
- Principle of Operation ............................................. 160
- Using the speed limiter ............................................. 160

### Load Carrying
- General Information .................................................. 161
- Luggage Anchor Points ............................................. 161
- Luggage Covers .......................................................... 163
- Rear Under Floor Storage ......................................... 163
- Cargo Nets ............................................................... 163
- Roof Racks and Load Carriers .................................... 165

### Towing
- Towing a Trailer ........................................................ 168
- Retractable tow ball .................................................. 168

### Driving Hints
- Running-In ................................................................ 172
- Cold Weather Precautions ......................................... 172
- Driving Through Water ............................................. 172

### Roadside Emergencies
- First Aid Kit .............................................................. 173
- Warning Triangle ........................................................ 173
- Emergency Exit .......................................................... 173

### Fuses
- Fuse Box Locations .................................................... 174
- Changing a Fuse ......................................................... 174
- Fuse Specification Chart ............................................. 175

### Vehicle recovery
- Towing Points ............................................................. 183
- Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels ......................... 183

### Maintenance
- General Information .................................................... 185
- Opening and Closing the Bonnet .................................. 185
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma) .............. 187
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel ............... 188
- Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel ............... 189
Table of Contents

Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)..............................190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel..............................................................190
Engine Oil Check.................................................190
Engine Coolant Check......................................190
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check...........................................191
Washer Fluid Check.............................................191
Technical Specifications...........................................192

Vehicle Care
Cleaning the Exterior.............................................195
Cleaning the Interior.............................................195
Repairing Minor Paint Damage..............................196

Vehicle battery
Jump-Starting the Vehicle...........................................197
Changing the Vehicle Battery...........................................198
Battery connection points...........................................198

Wheels and Tyres
General Information..................................................199
Changing a Road Wheel.............................................199
Tyre Repair Kit............................................................204
Tyre Care...............................................................207
Using Winter Tyres.................................................208
Using Snow Chains...................................................208
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System..........................208
Technical Specifications...........................................209

Vehicle identification
Vehicle Identification Plate...........................................214
Vehicle Identification Number....................................215

Capacities and Specifications
Technical Specifications...........................................216

Audio introduction
Important audio information.............................................219

Audio unit overview
Audio unit overview..................................................220

Audio system security
Security code..........................................................226

Audio unit operation
On/off control...........................................................227
Sound button...........................................................227
Waveband button.......................................................227
Station tuned control.................................................227
Station preset buttons...............................................228
Autostore control.......................................................228
Traffic information control........................................228

Audio unit menus
Automatic volume control...........................................230
Digital signal processing (DSP)........................................230
News broadcasts.......................................................230
Alternative frequencies.............................................230
Regional mode (REG)..................................................231

Compact disc player
Compact disc playback..................................................232
Track selection.........................................................232
Fast forward/reverse...............................................232
Shuffle/random.........................................................232
Repeat compact disc tracks.........................................232
Compact disc track scanning.......................................233
MP3 file playback....................................................233
MP3 display options.................................................233
Ending compact disc playback....................................234

Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket
Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket..................................235
# Table of Contents

## Audio troubleshooting
Audio troubleshooting...............................236

## Telephone
General Information....................................237
Bluetooth setup............................................237
Telephone setup...........................................237
Telephone controls.....................................238
Using the telephone...................................238

## Voice control
Principle of Operation.................................241
Using voice control.......................................241
Audio unit commands...............................242
Telephone commands..................................249
Climate control commands..........................254

## Connectivity
General Information....................................257
Connecting an external device.....................258
Connecting an external device - Vehicles
  With: Bluetooth........................................258
Using a USB device.....................................259
Using an iPod.............................................260

## Navigation introduction
General Information....................................262
Road Safety...................................................262

## Navigation Quick start
Navigation Quick start................................264

## Navigation unit overview
Navigation unit overview.............................267
Loading the navigation data.......................271

## System settings
System settings.............................................272

## Navigation system
Route options menu.......................................275
Route displays.............................................276

## Traffic Message Channel
Principle of Operation................................277
Using TMC....................................................277

## Map updates
Map updates.................................................278

## Appendices
Type approvals.............................................279
Electromagnetic compatibility....................281
ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This vehicle has received the endorsement of TÜV, the accredited international testing organisation, for its allergy-friendly properties.

All materials used in the manufacture of the interior of this vehicle meet strict requirements of the TÜV TOXPROOF Criteria Catalogue for Vehicle Interiors by TÜV Produkt and Umwelt GmbH and are designed to minimize the risk of allergic reactions.

Additionally an efficient pollen filter protects the passengers against allergen particles in the outdoor air.

For more information, contact TÜV at www.tuv.com.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

Symbols in this handbook

WARNING

You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

CAUTION

You risk damaging your vehicle if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the caution symbol.

Symbols on your vehicle

![Warning Symbol]

![Note Symbol]

When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this handbook before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

Now you can be sure that your Ford parts are Ford parts

Your Ford has been built to the highest standards using high quality Ford Original Parts. As a result, you can enjoy driving it for many years.
Introduction

Should the unexpected occur and a major part needs replacing, we recommend that you accept nothing less than Ford Original Parts.

The use of Ford Original Parts ensures that your vehicle is repaired to its pre-accident condition and maintains its maximum residual value.

Ford Original Parts match Ford’s stringent safety requirements and high standards of fit, finish and reliability. Quite simply, they represent the best overall repair value, including parts and labour costs.

Now it is easier to tell if you have really been given Ford Original Parts. The Ford logo is clearly visible on the following parts if they are Ford Original Parts. If your vehicle has to be repaired, look for the clearly visible Ford branding and make sure that only Ford Original Parts have been used.

Look for the Ford logo on the following parts

Sheet metal
- Bonnet
- Wings
- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid or tailgate

Bumper and radiator grille
- Radiator grille
- Front and rear bumper
Introduction

Exterior mirror

Glass
- Rear window
- Side glass
- Windscreen

Lighting
- Rear lamps
- Headlamp
At a Glance

Instrument panel overview
Left-hand drive
Right-hand drive

A  Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 100).
B  Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 60). Main beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 57).
C  Left-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 83).
C  Left-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 83).
C  Right-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information and entertainment display control.
C  Right-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 83).
At a Glance

D Instrument cluster. See Gauges (page 77). See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).

E Left-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information and entertainment display control.

E Left-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Audio control. See Audio Control (page 50).

E Right-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information display control. See Information Displays (page 83).

E Right-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Audio control. See Audio Control (page 50).

F Wiper lever. See Wipers and Washers (page 52).

G Information and entertainment display.

H Audio unit. See Audio unit overview (page 220).

I Door lock button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 39).

J Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 59).

K Power liftgate switch. See Locking and Unlocking (page 39).

L Parking aid switch. See Parking Aids (page 148).

M Active park assist switch. See Active Park Assist (page 152).

N Start-stop switch. See Using start-stop (page 133).

O Heated rear window switch. See Heated Windows and Mirrors (page 105).

P Heated windscreen switch. See Heated Windows and Mirrors (page 105).

Q Climate controls. See Climate Control (page 100).

R Start button. See Keyless Starting (page 129).

S Ignition switch. See Ignition Switch (page 127).


U Steering wheel adjustment. See Adjusting the Steering Wheel (page 50).

V Horn.


Power liftgate

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not operate the luggage compartment lid unless it is free from obstruction.

⚠️ Careless opening and closing of the luggage compartment lid can override the protection function and cause injuries.

The luggage compartment lid can be operated using the remote control, the centre console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 39).

**Keyless entry**

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges.

Unlocking the vehicle

Open any door.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

**Locking the vehicle**

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

See **Keyless Entry** (page 43).

**Adjusting the steering wheel**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.
At a Glance

**Autowipers**

- **A** High sensitivity
- **B** On
- **C** Low sensitivity

**Autolamps**

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

See **Autolamps** (page 58).

**Electric windows**

*Note:* To reduce wind noise or buffeting when just one window is open, open the opposite window slightly.
At a Glance

See **Power Windows** (page 71).

**Electric folding mirrors**

See **Electric exterior mirrors** (page 73).

**Information displays**

Use the arrow buttons to navigate through the menus and press **OK** to make a selection.

See **General Information** (page 83).

**Manual climate control**

**Heating the interior quickly**

**Cooling the interior quickly**

**Defrosting and demisting the windscreen**

See **Manual Climate Control** (page 101).

**Automatic climate control**

See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 103).
**Keyless starting**

Press the start button.

**Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving**

**WARNING**

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the start button for two seconds, or press three times within three seconds.

Press the start button.

See **Keyless Starting** (page 129).

**Diesel particulate filter (DPF)**

**WARNING**

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.

Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.
WARNING

We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.

Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

See Fuel filler flap (page 137).

Manual transmission

Selecting reverse gear

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

See Manual Transmission (page 141).

Automatic transmission

WARNING

Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

P  Park
R  Reverse
N  Neutral
D  Drive
S  Sport mode and manual shifting

See Automatic Transmission (page 141).

Speed limiter

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited.

See Speed Limiter (page 160).
Towing the vehicle on four wheels

**CAUTION**

⚠️ For certain engine and transmission combinations, it is recommended not to tow the vehicle with the drive wheels on the ground.

See *Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels* (page 183).
**CHILD SEATS**

![No child seat image]

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Secure children that are less than 150 centimetres (59 inches) tall in a suitable, approved child restraint, in the rear seat.

⚠️ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

⚠️ Read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.

⚠️ Do not modify child restraints in any way.

⚠️ Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

---

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.

⚠️ If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child restraints checked by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from your Dealer.

**Child restraints for different mass groups**

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

**Baby safety seat**

![Baby safety seat image]

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.
Child Safety

Child safety seat

Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

**BOOSTER SEATS**

**WARNINGS**

⚠ Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seat belt.

⚠ Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seat belt that is slack or twisted.

⚠ Do not put the seat belt under your child’s arm or behind its back.

⚠ Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child’s height.

⚠ Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

⚠ Secure children that weigh more than 15 kilograms (33 pounds) but are less than 150 centimetres (59 inches) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

---

**CAUTION**

⚠ When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See [Head Restraints](page 110).

**Booster seat (Group 2)**

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seat belt over the centre of your child’s shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.
Child Safety

Booster cushion (Group 3)

![Booster cushion image]

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

⚠️ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

**CAUTION**

⚠️ The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See Head Restraints (page 110).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seat belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See Seats (page 109).

**Child seat positions**

| Seating positions                  | Mass group categories
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby safety seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child safety seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booster seat or cushion</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**

|                                    | 1  | 2  | 3  |
| Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF** | U¹| U¹| U¹|

Note: For detailed information on child seat positioning, refer to Heads Restraints (page 110).
### Child Safety

#### Mass group categories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0+</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)</td>
<td>Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)</td>
<td>9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)</td>
<td>15 - 25 kg (33 - 55 lbs)</td>
<td>22 - 36 kg (49 - 79 lbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baby safety seat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child safety seat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booster seat or cushion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **U** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.
- **X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.
- **U¹** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.
- **UF¹** Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

#### ISOFIX child seats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>0+</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear facing</td>
<td>Forward facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)</td>
<td>9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Size class**
- **Seat type**
- **Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped**

- **ISOFIX - Grand C-MAX**
  - Size class: C, D, E¹
  - Seat type: IL²
  - Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped

- **ISOFIX - C-MAX**
  - Size class: D, E¹
  - Seat type: IL², IUF³
  - Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped
## Child Safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat type</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second row centre seat</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seat type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third row seat ISOFIX - Grand C-MAX</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seat type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IL** Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers’ vehicle recommendation lists.

**IUF** Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both **universal** and **semi-universal** child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters **A** to **G**. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

<sup>3</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.
ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS

WARNING

Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See Child Seat Positioning (page 21).

Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are fitted behind the outboard rear seats for child restraints with a top tether.

Top tether anchor points - All vehicles

Top tether anchor points - C-MAX

WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with the comfort seat system, slide the second row seat forwards to gain access to the anchor points. After installing the ISOFIX seat, do not move the seat to the comfort position as it could interfere with the tether strap routing.
**Child Safety**

**Top tether anchor points - Grand C-MAX**

**WARNINGS**

Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 163).

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

**Attaching a child seat with top tethers**

**WARNINGS**

Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.

3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

**CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**

**WARNING**

You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

**Note:** Pressing the switch will also disable the rear electric window switches.
Child Safety
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Airbags

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

⚠️ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

⚠️ Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 109).

⚠️ Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seat belts carried out by a properly trained technician.

⚠️ Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.

⚠️ Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

⚠️ Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by a properly trained technician.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

Front airbags

E74302

The driver airbag, front passenger airbag and the seat belt pretensioners will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the driver and front passenger airbags will not deploy.

Side and curtain airbags

During significant lateral collisions, only the airbags on the side affected by the collision and the seat belt pretensioners will deploy. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the body. The side and curtain airbags will not deploy during minor lateral collisions, front collisions, rear collisions or overturns.
Side airbags

Side airbags are fitted inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

Curtain airbags

Curtain airbags are fitted inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Moulded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

Seat belts

**WARNINGS**

- Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 109).

**WARNINGS**

- Never use a seat belt for more than one person.
- Use the correct buckle for each seat belt.
- Do not use a seat belt that is slack or twisted.
- Do not wear thick clothing. The seat belt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Seat belt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will deploy.

**All vehicles**

The driver and front passenger seat belt systems are fitted with a seat belt pretensioner.

**Grand C-MAX**

The second row centre seat belt system is also fitted with a seat belt pretensioner.

**Status after a collision**

**WARNINGS**

- Seat belts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.
- If a seat belt pretensioner has been deployed the seat belt must be renewed.
FASTENING THE SEAT BELTS

WARNINGS

⚠️ Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seat belt properly if you do not hear a click.

⚠️ In order to ensure that the centre belt works properly, the rear seatback must be correctly engaged.

Note: The seat belt tongues are designed so that you can only insert them into the correct buckle.

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

When in use, the rear seat belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

C-MAX

Second row outboard seat belt
When in use, the rear seat belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

**Second row centre seat belt**

![Second row centre seat belt](image)

The retractor for the rear centre seat belt is located in the roof.

To fasten the seat belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Insert the smaller tongue into the black buckle to the left of the centre seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the centre seat.

**Note:** If in constant use, you can leave the belt buckled in the black buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the belt from the black buckle.

Press the red button on the right buckle to release the belt. Let it retract.

Press the button on the side of the black buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly to the retractor in the roof.

Stow the larger tongue flat against the roof trim.
Grand C-MAX

Second row centre seat belt anchor point

The retractor for the rear centre seat belt is located in the roof.

To fasten the seat belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Securely attach the spring hook to the anchor point.
3. Pull the tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the centre seat.

Note: If in constant use, you can leave the belt attached to the anchor point. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the spring hook from the anchor point.
Press the red button on the right buckle to release the belt. Let it retract. Unclip the spring hook to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly to the retractor in the roof. Stow the tongue securely flat against the roof trim.

**WARNING**

Always replace the rubber cover when stowing the belt assembly.

**Third row seat belts**

**Note:** When not in use, place the seat belts in the clips on the outboard trim. Make sure that the seat belt tongue is positioned above the clip.
**Occupant protection**

**SEAT BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT**

![Image of seat belt height adjustment](image)

**Note:** Lifting the slider slightly while pressing the locking button makes it easier to release the locking mechanism.

To raise or lower, press the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

**SEAT BELT REMINDER**

**WARNING**

The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seat belt properly.

The seat belt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's or front seat passenger's seat belt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if the driver's or front seat passenger's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after a few minutes but the seat belt reminder warning lamp will remain on until the driver's or front seat passenger's seat belt is fastened.

**Deactivating the seat belt reminder**

See your dealer.

**Grand C-MAX only**

**Rear seat belt reminder**

**WARNING**

If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

**Note:** Press the OK button on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.

A visual reminder of the seat belt status will be shown on the instrument display once the engine is started, and once again if any are unfastened when the vehicle is moving.

Fastened seat belts are indicated by a tick symbol.

If a belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving, the seat belt status screen will be displayed and the relevant seats will be highlighted by an exclamation mark. An audible chime will also sound.

**USING SEAT BELTS DURING PREGNANCY**

![Image of pregnant woman buckled up](image)
WARNING

Position the seat belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

WARNING

Make sure that the passenger airbag is disabled when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch

WARNING

If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.

Note: The key switch is located at the end of the instrument panel on the side of the glove compartment. The airbag deactivation lamp is located between the sun visors.

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79). Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

Disabling the passenger airbag

A Disabled

B Enabled

Turn the switch to position A.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.
Occupant protection

Enabling the passenger airbag

**WARNING**

Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are **not** using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Turn the switch to position B.
GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

CAUTIONS

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended. This will safeguard against any potential malicious frequency blocking.

Note: You could unlock the doors if you press the buttons on the remote control unintentionally.

The operating range between your remote control and your vehicle varies depending on the environment.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can programme a maximum of eight remote controls to use with your vehicle (including any supplied with your vehicle).

Programming a new remote control

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Cycle the key from position 0 to II and then back to 0 four times within six seconds.
3. Leave the key in position 0 and press any button on the remote control within 10 seconds. You will receive confirmation via a chime or LED that programming has been successful.

Note: Further remote controls may be programmed at this stage.

4. Press any button on each additional remote control within 10 seconds of each other.

Reprogramming the unlocking function

Note: When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver’s door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote key simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

Remote control with a folding key blade
1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.
5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.
6. Replace the battery cover.

Remote control without a folding key blade

1. Press and hold the pushbuttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.
3. Twist a flat bladed screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.
4. Carefully insert the screwdriver in the position shown to open the remote control.

5. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.

6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.

8. Install the key blade.

**CAUTION**

Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.
Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

CAUTION

Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: Do not leave your keys in the vehicle.

Locking

Locking with the key
Turn the top of the key towards the front of the vehicle.

Locking with the remote control

Note: The driver’s door can be locked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

Note: Your vehicle can be locked with a rear door open. The door will be locked when it is closed.

Press the button.

Unlocking

Unlocking with the key
Turn the top of the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

Unlocking with the remote control

Note: The driver’s door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

Note: If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.

Press the button.

Double locking

WARNING

Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

Note: If you double lock your vehicle whilst inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.

Note: Your vehicle can be double locked with a rear door open. The door will be double locked when it is closed.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Double locking with the key
Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

Double locking with the remote control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Unlocking

Unlocking with the key
Turn the top of the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

Unlocking with the remote control

Note: The driver’s door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

Note: If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.

Press the button.

Automatic relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

Reprogramming the unlocking function

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver’s door is unlocked (See Programming the remote control (page 36)).
Locking and unlocking confirmation

Note: If your vehicle has double locking, the direction indicators will only flash twice once you have activated double locking.

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

When you double lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash three times.

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

Locking and unlocking the doors from inside

Press the button. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10).

Sliding door

Note: The sliding door is inhibited from opening fully when the fuel filler flap is open.

Opening the sliding door

Pull the exterior handle or press the interior button, and open the door. If opened fully it will lock in place.

Closing the sliding door

Pull the exterior handle or press the interior button, and close the door.

Luggage compartment lid

Power liftgate

WARNINGS

Do not operate the luggage compartment lid unless it is free from obstruction.

Careless opening and closing of the luggage compartment lid can override the protection function and cause injuries.

Note: The luggage compartment lid will stop automatically while opening, and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Note: The luggage compartment lid will stop automatically while closing, and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.

Note: You can manually move the luggage compartment lid.

The luggage compartment lid can be operated using the remote control, the centre console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

CAUTIONS

Operate the luggage compartment lid only when your vehicle is stationary.

Make sure there is enough headroom to open the luggage compartment lid.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, make sure the selector lever is in P.

In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work if the luggage compartment lid is frozen to the seal.
Luggage compartment lid switch

Remote control and centre console switch

Note: Pressing any button again during operation will stop the luggage compartment lid. A further press will reverse the direction.

Note: To operate the centre console switch, the ignition must be on.

To open a fully closed luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the centre console switch or luggage compartment lid release handle.

To fully open a partially opened luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press and hold the button on the remote control for at least three seconds.
- Press the centre console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

To stop the luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the centre console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

Programming the luggage compartment lid stop position

1. Open the luggage compartment lid.
2. Stop the luggage compartment lid at the required height.
3. Press and hold the luggage compartment lid switch for at least three seconds. A chime will be heard.

Reprogramming the luggage compartment lid to a new stop position

1. Open the luggage compartment lid.
2. Move the luggage compartment lid to the new required position.
3. Press and hold the luggage compartment lid switch for at least three seconds. A chime will be heard.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

WARNINGS

The anti-trap function will be deactivated when the luggage compartment lid comes into contact with the vehicle body.

The luggage compartment lid will not detect obstacles when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

Note: Do not leave a passive key in the vehicle when closing the luggage compartment. A message will be shown in the display. See Information Messages (page 90).
Note: A recessed grip is incorporated inside the luggage compartment lid to facilitate manual closing.

To close the luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press and hold the button on the remote control for at least three seconds.
- Press the centre console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

The luggage compartment lid will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

**Locking the doors individually with the key**

**Note:** If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

**Left-hand side**

Turn clockwise to lock.

**Right-hand side**

Turn anti-clockwise to lock.

**Grand C-MAX**

Push to lock.
Unlocking

**Note:** If the child safety locks have also been activated, pulling the internal lever will only deactivate the emergency locking and not the child safety lock. The doors can only be opened using the external door handle.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Unlock the driver’s door using the key. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

---

**KEYLESS ENTRY**

**General information**

**WARNING**

⚠️ The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery is flat.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.

---

**Passive key**

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 39).

---

**Locking the vehicle**

**WARNING**

⚠️ The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If the locking function is not activated, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** Do not grab the door handle.
Locks

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:
• Touch a front door handle lock sensor once.

To activate double locking and arm the alarm:
• Touch a front door handle lock sensor twice within three seconds.

Note: There must be clearance between each touch of the door handle.

Note: Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

Luggage compartment lid

Note: The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and, will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the vehicle with the doors locked.

Note: If a second valid passive key is located within the rear exterior detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.

Unlocking the vehicle

Note: If the vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the keyless system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.

Note: If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the keyless system will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked using the key blade. Unlocking the vehicle once will enable the keyless system.

Note: Do not touch the front door handle lock sensor when opening a door.

Open any door.

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.
Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver’s door and the luggage compartment lid are unlocked (See Programming the remote control (page 36).), note the following:
If the driver’s door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10). Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.
A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.
In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.
To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.
All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.
Note: Only the driver's door handle is fitted with a lock cylinder.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the electric windows with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function.
Note: Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See Power Windows (page 71).
Global opening

To open all the windows, press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Global closing

Vehicles without keyless entry

WARNING
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.

Vehicles with keyless entry

WARNING
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

Note: Global closing can be activated using the driver’s door handle. Global opening and closing can also be activated using the buttons on the passive key.

To close all the windows, press and hold the driver’s door handle for at least two seconds. The anti-trap function is also active during global closing.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The engine immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

CODED KEYS

Note: Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognising your key as a valid one.

Note: Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Ask your dealer for further information. Have replacement keys recoded together with your existing keys.

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from your Ford Dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain additional keys from your Ford Dealer.

ARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER

The engine immobiliser is armed automatically a short time after you have switched the ignition off.

DISARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER

The engine immobiliser is disarmed automatically when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.
**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

**Alarm system**

Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.

**Perimeter alarm**

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorised access to your vehicle through the doors and the bonnet. It also protects the audio unit.

**Interior sensors**

![Interior sensors diagram]

**Battery back-up sounder**

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. It is armed directly when you lock the vehicle. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

**Triggering the alarm**

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the bonnet without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If the ignition is turned to position I, II or III without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within the vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes. Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

**Full and reduced guard**

**Full guard**

Full guard is the standard setting. In full guard, the interior sensors are activated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside the vehicle.
**Alarm**

*Note:* False alarms can also be triggered by the auxiliary heater. See **Auxiliary Heater** (page 106). If you are using the auxiliary heater, direct the air flow towards the footwell.

**Reduced guard**

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are deactivated when you arm the alarm.

*Note:* You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The next time you switch on the ignition, the alarm will be reset to full guard.

**Ask on Exit**

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

If you select **Ask on Exit**, the message **Reduced guard?** appears in the instrument cluster display each time you switch the ignition off.

If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave the vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

**Selecting full or reduced guard**

*Note:* Selecting **Reduced** does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select **Ask on Exit**.

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 83).

**Information messages**

See **Information Messages** (page 90).

**ARMING THE ALARM**

To arm the alarm, lock the vehicle. See **Locks** (page 39).

**DISARMING THE ALARM**

**Vehicles without keyless entry**

**Perimeter alarm**

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

**Category one alarm**

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

**Vehicles with keyless entry**

*Note:* A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 43).

**Perimeter alarm**

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

**Category one alarm**

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.
**ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL**

**WARNING**

Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See *Sitting in the Correct Position* (page 109).

**WARNING**

Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.

**AUDIO CONTROL**

Select the required source on the audio unit.

The following functions can be operated with the remote control:

**Type 1**

- A  Volume up
- B  Seek up or next
- C  Volume down
- D  Seek down or previous
- E  Mode

Press the mode button to select the audio source.
Seek, next or previous

Press the seek button to:
• tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
• play the next or the previous track.

Press and **hold** the seek button to:
• tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
• seek through a track.

Pull the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Voice control** (page 241).
**WIPERS AND WASHERS**

**WINDSCREEN WIPERS**

- **A** Single wipe
- **B** Intermittent wipe or autowipers
- **C** Normal wipe
- **D** High speed wipe

---

**Automatic wiper system**

Some models without autowipers are fitted with a speed-dependent front screen wiper system.

When the vehicle is slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the wiper speed will automatically switch to the next lower wiper speed setting.

When the vehicle speed is increased, the wiper speed will return to the manually-chosen setting.

Moving the wiper lever when the system is operating will switch off the system.

If the vehicle is again slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the system is reactivated.

---

**AUTOWIPERS**

**CAUTIONS**

- **Do not switch autowipers on in dry weather conditions.** The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windscreen.

- **Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears.** If you do not replace them, the rain sensor will continue to detect water on the windscreen and the wipers will operate, even though the majority of the windscreen is dry.

- **Fully defrost the windscreen in icy conditions before you switch autowipers on.**

- **Switch autowipers off before you enter a car wash.**

**Note:** If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, dipped headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windscreen wipers continuously.
If you switch autowipers on, the wipers will not cycle until water is detected on the windscreen. The rain sensor will then continuously measure the amount of water on the windscreen and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor using the rotary control. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a lot of water on the windscreen. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate if the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windscreen.

### REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

#### Intermittent wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.
Wipers and Washers

Reverse gear wipe

The rear wiper will be activated automatically when selecting reverse gear if the rear wiper is not already switched on and the front wiper is operating.

Rear window washer

![Rear window washer](image)

**WARNING**

Do not operate the washer for more than 10 seconds at a time, and never when the reservoir is empty.

While the lever is pushed away from the steering wheel the washer will work in conjunction with the wipers. After releasing the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

The headlamp washers will operate with the windscreen washers when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** To stop the washer fluid reservoir emptying quickly, the headlamp washers will not operate every time that you use the windscreen washers.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

![Checking wiper blades](image)

**E66644**

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness. Clean the wiper blade lips with water applied with a soft sponge.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Windscreen wiper blades

**CAUTIONS**

Set the windscreen wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades.

You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. The windscreen wipers will return to their normal position as soon as you switch on the ignition so make sure that the outside of the windscreen is free from snow and ice before you switch on the ignition.
Wipers and Washers

Note: The windscreen wiper blades are different in length. See Technical Specifications (page 56). If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the rain sensor may not work correctly.

Service position

Switch off the ignition and move the wiper lever to position A within three seconds. Release the lever when the windscreen wipers have moved to the service position.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Set the windscreen wipers in the service position and lift the wiper arms.

1. Press the locking buttons together.
2. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
   Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.
3. Install in the reverse order.

Rear window wiper blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
   Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.
5. Install in the reverse order.
Wipers and Washers

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Windscreen wiper blade lengths

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
<th>Driver side</th>
<th>Passenger side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>730 (28.7)</td>
<td>630 (24.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Lighting**

**LIGHTING CONTROL**

Lighting control positions

A Off  
B Side and tail lamps  
C Headlamps

**Parking lamps**

- **CAUTION**
  Prolonged use of the parking lamps will discharge the battery.

Switch off the ignition.

**Both sides**

Turn the switch to position B.

**One side**

- A Right-hand side  
- B Left-hand side

**Main and dipped beam**

Push the lever forward to switch between main and dipped beam.

**Headlamp flasher**

Pull the lever slightly towards the steering wheel.
Home safe lighting

Switch the ignition off and pull the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel to switch the headlamps on. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will go off automatically after three minutes with any door open, or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed.

The home safe lights can be cancelled by either pulling the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel again or by turning the ignition switch ON.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING

In severe weather conditions, it may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually.

Note: If you have switched autolamps on, you can only switch the main beam on when autolamps has switched the headlamps on.

Note: If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, dipped headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windscreen wipers continuously.

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display. See Information Displays (page 83).

FRONT FOG LAMPS

WARNING

Only use the front fog lamps when visibility is considerably restricted by fog, snow or rain.

REAR FOG LAMPS

WARNINGS

Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 50 metres (164 feet).

Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 metres (164 feet).
ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING/XENON HEADLAMPS

To adjust the headlamps for driving on the left or right hand side of the road, see your dealer.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING

Note: Vehicles with Xenon headlamps are equipped with automatic headlamp levelling.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

Recommended headlamp levelling switch positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load in luggage compartment</th>
<th>Switch position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front seats</td>
<td>Second row seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* See Vehicle Identification Plate (page 214).
** Vehicles with active suspension.
**Lighting**

**DIRECTION INDICATORS**

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash only three times.

**CORNERING LAMPS**

- A  Headlamp beam
- B  Cornering lamp beam
The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

**INTERIOR LAMPS**

**Interior lighting**

**Note:** Individual lamps may be switched on independently, but not off if all lamps have been switched on by the driver.

**Note:** All other lamps will be either non-switchable or with individual reading or dome lamp functionality only.

The lamps will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, all lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

**Side mounted lamp**

If you press switch B all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch C.

**Centre mounted lamp**

If you press switch C all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch D.

**Ambient lighting**

If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the ambient lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

If dark, the ambient lights are active if the ignition and headlamps are switched on.
Ambient lighting illuminates several areas, for example footwells, cup holders and doors with a single colour and can be switched on and off using the information display menu. See General Information (page 83).

Use the instrument lighting dimmer switches to adjust to the desired brightness. See Instrument Lighting Dimmer (page 122).

**REMOVING A HEADLAMP**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Have Xenon bulbs changed by a trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

1. Open the bonnet. See Opening and Closing the Bonnet (page 185).

2. Remove the screws.

3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the centre of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.

4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you reconnect the electrical connector properly.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower fixing point.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that the screw is located in the headlamp moulding before you install it.

**CHANGING A BULB**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Switch the lights and the ignition off.

⚠️ Let the bulb cool down before removing it.

⚠️ Have Xenon bulbs changed by a properly trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.
**Lighting**

**CAUTIONS**

Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

Only fit bulbs of the correct specification. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 69).

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

**Headlamp**

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 62).

2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.

3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

**Headlamp main beam**

**CAUTION**

Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 62).

**Direction indicator**

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 62).
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

**Headlamp dipped beam**

**CAUTION**

Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 62).

**Cornering lamp**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 62).

**Side lamp**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 62).
Side repeater

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.

2. Remove the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb.

Approach lamp

Note: Position the mirror glass as far inwards as possible.

1. Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and release the metal retaining clip.

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.
Front fog lamps

Note: You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

1. Using a suitable implement, remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Remove the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.

Rear lamps

Direction indicator, tail and brake lamp

1. Remove the trim panel.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nut.
4. Remove the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
Lighting

5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

A. Tail and brake lamp
B. Direction indicator

Reversing lamp, tail lamp and fog lamp

1. Remove the trim panel.

2. Remove the wing nut.
3. Remove the lamp.

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

A. Reversing lamp
B. Tail and fog lamp
Central high mounted brake lamp

1. Detach the clips.

2. Insert a suitable object into the holes.

3. Carefully pull the lamp towards the front of the vehicle to release the spring clips.

4. Remove the lamp.

5. Remove the bulb holder.

6. Remove the bulb.
Number plate lamp

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb anti-clockwise and remove it.

Interior lamps

Vehicles with LED lamps

Note: The LED board is not a serviceable item, please consult your dealer if this fails.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lamp</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Power (watt)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front direction indicator</td>
<td>PY21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp main beam</td>
<td>H1</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Lighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lamp</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Power (watt)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp dipped beam</td>
<td>H7</td>
<td>55(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornering lamp</td>
<td>H1</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lamp</td>
<td>H11</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side repeater</td>
<td>WY5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear direction indicator</td>
<td>PY21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake and tail lamp</td>
<td>P21/5W</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog lamp</td>
<td>P21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
<td>P21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number plate lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central high mounted stop lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage compartment lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)Fit a replacement with the same rating as the one you have removed.
POWER WINDOWS

WARNING

Do not operate the electric windows unless they are free from obstruction.

Note: If you operate the switches often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

Switch on the ignition to operate the electric windows.

Global opening and closing

You can also operate the electric windows with the ignition off via the global opening and closing function. See Locks (page 39).

Driver's door switches

You can operate all the windows with the switches on the door trim panel of the driver's door.

Opening and closing the windows automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it completely. Press or lift it again to stop the windows.

Safety switch for rear windows

WARNING

On some vehicles, pressing the switch will also lock the rear doors from inside. See Child Safety Locks (page 25).

Note: You can always operate the rear windows from the driver's door.

A switch in the driver's door disables the rear electric window switches.

The light in the switch comes on and the lights in the rear window switches go off when the rear windows are disabled.

Anti-trap function

WARNING

Careless closing of the windows can override the protection function and cause injuries.
The electric windows will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Overriding the anti-trap function**

**WARNING**

⚠️ While you close the window for the third time, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing window.

To override this protection function when there is a resistance, e.g. in the winter, proceed as follows:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and you cannot close the window automatically. The window will override the resistance and you can close it fully.
3. If the window does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by an expert.

**Resetting the memory of the electric windows**

**WARNING**

⚠️ The anti-trap function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

After the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle you must reset the memory separately for each window:

**Note:** On vehicles with a convertible top, the roof and doors must be fully closed before carrying out the following procedure.

1. Lift and hold the switch again for one more second.
2. Push and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
3. Release the switch.
4. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat procedure if the window does not close automatically.

**EXTERIOR MIRRORS**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.

**Manual folding mirrors**

**Folding**

Push the mirror towards the door window glass.

**Unfolding**

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.
Windows and Mirrors

ELECTRIC EXTERIOR MIRRORS

A C
B
E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror

Mirror tilting positions

E70847

The electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. See Heated Windows and Mirrors (page 105).

Electric folding mirrors

Automatic folding and unfolding

Note: If the mirrors have been folded using the manual fold button they can only be unfolded using the manual fold button.

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock the vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock the vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request, the driver's interior door handle or starting the engine.

Manual folding and unfolding

The electric folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

Note: You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after you switch off the ignition. They will be deactivated as soon as a door is opened.

Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

E72623

E70846
If you press the switch again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.  

**Note:** When the mirrors are operated often during a short period of time, the system may become inoperable for a period of time to prevent damage due to overheating.

**AUTO-DIMMING MIRROR**

The auto-dimming mirror will adjust automatically when hit by glaring light from behind. It will not work when you have selected reverse gear.

**BLIND SPOT MONITOR**

**Blind spot information system (BLIS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⚠ The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system only provides a warning to assist you in detecting vehicles in the blind spot zones. The system will not detect obstacles, pedestrians, motorcyclists or cyclists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠ Do not use the system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors, and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The system is not a replacement for careful driving and is only to be used as an aid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using the system**

The system displays a yellow indicator located in the exterior mirrors.

**Note:** Both indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational.
Note: On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system is active only in S, D and N.

The system is only active when you exceed 10 km/h (6 mph). The system is temporarily deactivated when you select reverse gear.

System detection and alerts

The system will trigger the alert for vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the rear or merge from the side. Vehicles that you pass, or vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the front, will only trigger the alert after the vehicle has remained in the blind spot zone for a short period of time.

Note: Vehicles that pass through the blind zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

The system consists of two radar sensors each located behind the rear wheels hidden behind the bumpers.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Do not place items such as bumper stickers in this area.

⚠️ Repairs to these areas using body filler will affect the performance of the system.

Detection limitations

There may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain manoeuvring of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind zone following each other closely.

False alerts

Note: False alerts are temporary and will self correct.

There may be certain instances when the system will alert with no vehicle present in the blind zone.

Circumstances where false alerts may occur:

- Road guardrails.
- Motorway concrete walls.
- Construction areas.
- Sharp turns around a building.
- Bushes and trees.
- Cyclists and motorcyclists.
- Coming to a stop with a vehicle directly behind but very close.

Turning the system on and off

Note: The on or off position will remain until manually changed.

You can turn the system on and off using the information display. See Information Displays (page 83).
When you turn the system off no further alerts will be received. The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).

Detection errors

**Note:** The alert indicator in the mirror will not illuminate.

If the system senses a fault on either sensor, the system warning symbol will illuminate and remain on. The information display will confirm the fault and indicate whether the left or right side is affected.

**Blocked sensor**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

**CAUTION**

⚠️ The sensors may not detect vehicles in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** Keep the rear bumper area surrounding the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow.

If a sensor becomes blocked the system performance may degrade. A blocked sensor message may be displayed.

The system will automatically return to normal operation once two other vehicles have been detected on both sides.

**Trailer towing false alerts**

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly be detected. Switch the system off to avoid false alerts. See Information Displays (page 83).

If the vehicle is fitted with a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and deactivate. A confirmation message will be shown in the information display. See Information Messages (page 90). The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).
Instrument Cluster

GAUGES

Type 1

A  Information display. See Information Displays (page 83).
B  Speedometer
C  Engine coolant temperature gauge
D  Fuel gauge
E  Tachometer
Information display. See Information Displays (page 83).

B Speedometer
C Engine coolant temperature gauge
D Fuel gauge
E Tachometer

**Engine coolant temperature gauge**

**All vehicles**

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the centre section.

**CAUTION**

Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See Engine Coolant Check (page 191).

**Fuel gauge**

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.
WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators illuminate when the ignition is switched on:

- ABS
- Airbag
- Brake system
- ESP off
- Frost
- Low fuel
- Stability control (ESP)

If a warning or indicator lamp does not illuminate when the ignition is switched on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by properly trained technician.

ABS warning lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without ABS). Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

Airbag warning lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

Blind spot monitor indicator

It will illuminate when this feature is deactivated or in conjunction with a message. See Blind Spot Monitor (page 74). See Information Messages (page 90).

Brake system lamp

It illuminates when the parking brake is engaged.

WARNING

Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Use your brakes with care.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

Cruise control indicator

It will illuminate when you have set a speed using the cruise control system. See Using Cruise Control (page 158).

Direction indicators

Flashes during operation. A sudden increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb. See Changing a Bulb (page 62).

Engine warning lamp

If it illuminates with the engine running, this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

CAUTION

If the engine warning lamp illuminates in conjunction with a message, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Front fog lamp indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost warning lamp

**WARNING**

Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

Glow plug indicator

See *Starting a Diesel Engine* (page 128).

Headlamp indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp dipped beam or the side and tail lamps on.

Ignition warning lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

Low fuel level warning lamp

If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

Low tyre pressure warning lamp

See *Tyre Pressure Monitoring System* (page 208).

Main beam indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp main beam on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Message indicator

It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. See *Information Messages* (page 90).

Oil pressure warning lamp

**CAUTION**

Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil Check* (page 190).

Rear fog lamp indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Seat belt reminder

See *Seat belt reminder* (page 33).
Stability control (ESP) indicator
While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. After switching on the ignition, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

If you switch traction control off, the warning lamp will illuminate. The lamp will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Start-stop indicator
It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message. See Using start-stop (page 133). See Information Messages (page 90).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS
Switching the chimes on and off
You can deactivate certain chimes using the Information display control. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10).
To set which chimes should sound:
1. Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight Settings with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight Chimes and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight Information or Warning and press the OK button to switch the chime on and off.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Press and hold the left arrow button to return to the main menu display.

Automatic transmission
If position P is not selected, a warning chime will sound when the driver’s door is opened.

Frost
WARNING
Even if the temperature rises to above +4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

A warning chime will sound in the following conditions:
• +4°C (39°F) or lower: frost warning
• 0°C (32°F) or lower: danger of icy roads.

Key outside car
Vehicles with keyless entry
If the engine is running and a passive key is no longer detected within the vehicle interior, a chime will sound.

Key-in-ignition
A warning tone will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

Lights on
A warning chime will sound if the driver’s door is opened with the exterior lights switched on and the ignition switched off.
Low fuel

A warning chime will sound when the remaining fuel is less than 8 litres (1.8 gallons).

Luggage compartment lid - power liftgate

During operation and programming, the system may sound various chimes:

- One short chime indicates that the liftgate will start to open or close.
- Two short chimes during opening or closing will indicate that an obstacle has been detected.
- Three short chimes indicate that the liftgate will not operate.
- One long chime confirms successful programming of an end stop position.

See Locking and Unlocking (page 39).

Seat belt reminder

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ The seat belt reminder remains in stand-by mode when the front seat belts have been fastened. It will be reactivated if either seat belt is unfastened.

⚠️ Do not sit on top of a fastened seat belt to prevent the seat belt reminder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seat belt properly.

When the vehicle’s speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, a warning chime will sound if either of the front seat belts are unfastened. The chime will stop after four minutes.

Grand C-MAX rear seat belt reminder

**WARNING**

⚠️ If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

When the vehicle’s speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, a warning chime will sound if a rear seat belt is unfastened. See Seat belt reminder (page 33).
GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch off the ignition.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering column. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

For detailed instructions on navigation, refer to the appropriate manual.

Device list

The icon changes to show the current function in use.

- CD
- Radio
- Auxiliary input

Controls

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.

Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.

Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.

Hold the left arrow button pressed at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).

Press the OK button to choose and confirm a setting.

Menu structure - information display

All vehicles

You can access the menu using the Information display control. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10).
Information Displays

- Trip Computer
  - Trip odometer
    - Dist to empty
    - Instant fuel
    - Average fuel
    -- Ford EcoMode
  - Average speed
  - Outside air
  - All values
  - Seatbelts
  - Auto StartStop
  - Driver assist
- Information
- Settings
  - Traction ctrl
    - BLIS
    - Hill start assist
    - Deflation detection
  - Lighting
    - Auto light rain
    - Ambient light
    - Dimming
    - Hdlamp delay
- Display
  - Navigation info
    - Always on
    - On demand
    - Always off
  - Language
    - English
    - Deutsch
    - Italiano
    - Français
    - Español
    - Türkçe
    - Русский
    - Nederlands
    - Polski
    - Svenska
    - Português
Menu structure - information and entertainment display

You can access the menu using the buttons on the audio or navigation unit.
Information Displays

All vehicles

CD

- Radio
  - FM
    - FM AST
    - DAB1
    - DAB2
    - AM
    - AM AST

- Auxiliary
  - iPOD
  - USB
  - Bluetooth audio
  - Line in

- Phone
  - Dial number
  - Phone book
  - Call lists
  - Bluetooth
  - Redial
  - Select phone
  - Reject all calls

- Menu
  - Audio settings
  - Clock settings
  - Adaptive volume
  - Sound
  - Nav audio mixing
  - DSP settings
  - DSP equaliser
  - News
  - Alt frequency
  - RDS regional
  - DAB service link
  - Bluetooth
  - Set time
  - Set date
  - GPS time
  - Set time zone
  - Summertime
  - 24-hour mode

Menu structure - information and entertainment display

You can access the menu using the Information and entertainment display control. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10).
Information Displays

Vehicles with navigation system

- Navigation
  - Route
    - Active guidance
      - Route sections list
      - Block next section
      - Unblock rt sectn
    - Destination input
      - Country
      - City/postcode
      - Street
      - District
      - Start guidance
    - Traffic
      - TA
      - TMC messages
      - Block next section
      - Route sections list
      - Unblock rt sectn
    - Home address
      - Start guidance
      - Change address
    - Last destinations
      - Favourites
        - Favourites A-Z
      - Points of interest
        - POIs nearby
        - Near destination
        - Along motorway
        - POIs near address
        - Search by name
    - Tour planning
      - New tour
      - Stored tours
    - Store position
  - Route options
    - Route
      - Eco
      - Fast
      - Short
      - Always ask
      - Leisurely
      - Normal
      - Fast

E130534
Information Displays

A
- CD
- Radio
- Auxiliary
- Phone
- Menu

B
- Navigation
- Special functions
  - Eco settings
  - Dynamic
  - Motorway
  - Tunnel
  - Ferry/motorail
  - Toll
  - Seasonal roads
  - Toll sticker

C
- Route options
  - Trailer
    - Roof box
  - GPS info
    - System info
    - Enter position
    - Demo mode
  - Map display
    - Route
      - Driver
      - Eco Settings
      - Dynamic
      - Motorway
      - Tunnel
      - Ferry/motorail
      - Toll
      - Seasonal roads
      - Toll sticker
    - Map content
      - Arrows on map
      - Nav time display
      - Map heading up
      - Best contrast

See separate menu structure

E130535

88
TRIP COMPUTER

Trip Odometer
Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

Distance to empty
Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Instantaneous fuel consumption
Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

Average fuel consumption
Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Average speed
Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

Outside air temperature
Shows the outside air temperature.

Odometer
Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.

Resetting the trip computer
To reset a particular display:
1. Highlight Trip Computer with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.
3. Hold the OK button pressed.

PERSONALISED SETTINGS

Language setting
A choice of eleven languages are available:
English, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Turkish, Russian, Dutch, Polish, Swedish and Portuguese.
Information Displays

Measure units
To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the OK button.

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:
• Distance to empty.
• Average fuel consumption.
• Instantaneous fuel consumption.
• Average speed.

Temperature units
To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the OK button.

Toggling the temperature units using this display will affect the following displays:
• Outside air temperature.
• The temperature display in the automatic climate control.

Chime deactivation
The following chimes can be deactivated:
• Warning messages.
• Information messages.

INFORMATION MESSAGES
Note: Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Airbag

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Airbag malfunction service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Information Displays

#### Alarm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm triggered check vehicle</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See Alarm (page 48).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm malfunction service required</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Battery and charging system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electrical system overvoltage stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery low check handbook</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Blind spot monitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLIS sensor blocked check handbook</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See Blind Spot Monitor (page 74).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS: right sensor fault service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS: left sensor fault service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLIS not available trailer attached</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See Blind Spot Monitor (page 74).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Information Displays

## Child power lock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child lock malfunction service</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Doors open

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driver door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver side rear door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger side rear door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage compartment lid open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close. See <strong>Opening and Closing the Bonnet</strong> (page 185).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power tailgate malfunction service</td>
<td></td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

### Engine immobiliser

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser active check handbook</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Your key has not been recognised. Remove the key and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser malfunction service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hill start assist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hill start assist not available</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Keyless entry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ford KeyFree key not inside car</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Keyless Entry</a> (page 43).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford KeyFree key inside vehicle</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Keyless Entry</a> (page 43).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford KeyFree Place key in key holder</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Keyless Entry</a> (page 43).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ford KeyFree no key detected</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Keyless Entry</a> (page 43).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key battery low replace soon</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Changing the remote control battery</a> (page 36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering lock engaged turn steering wheel</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Steering Wheel Lock</a> (page 127).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

### Lighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp malfunction service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake lamp bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the brake lamp bulbs have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs. See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 62).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park lamp bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the side or tail lamp bulbs have blown. Check the side and tail lamp bulbs. See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 62).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog lamp bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the rear fog lamp bulbs have blown. Check the rear fog lamp bulbs. See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 62).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dipped beam bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the headlamp dipped beam bulbs have blown. Check the headlamp dipped beam bulbs. See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 62).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer brake lamp bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer turn lamp bulb fault</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>One or both of the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Information Displays

## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High engine temperature stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid level low service now</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Check the brake fluid level. See <a href="#">Brake and Clutch Fluid Check</a> (page 191).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system malfunction stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine malfunction service now</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and switch off the engine immediately. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil level low check level</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Engine Oil Check</a> (page 190).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water detected in fuel service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine malfunction service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil change due</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid level low</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Check the washer fluid level. See <a href="#">Washer Fluid Check</a> (page 192).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Information Displays

## Power steering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steering lock malfunction stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering loss stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering assist malfunction service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Power steering. Full steering will be maintained but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering malfunction service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Stability control (ESP)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Traction control off</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <a href="#">General Information</a> (page 83).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Starting the engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ford KeyFree switch ignition off press POWER</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Keyless Starting</a> (page 129).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive to clean exhaust filter check handbook</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Diesel Particulate Filter</a> (page 130).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine malfunction service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <a href="#">Diesel Particulate Filter</a> (page 130).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Press brake to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 129).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press clutch to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 129).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press brake and clutch to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 129).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine preheating</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Diesel Particulate Filter</strong> (page 130).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning exhaust filter</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Diesel Particulate Filter</strong> (page 130).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter cleaning complete</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Diesel Particulate Filter</strong> (page 130).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Start-stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Switch ignition off</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See <strong>Using start-stop</strong> (page 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See <strong>Using start-stop</strong> (page 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Select neutral</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <strong>Using start-stop</strong> (page 133).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Manual Start required</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transmission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission too hot press brake</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further overheating. Select <strong>N (NEUTRAL)</strong> or <strong>P (PARK)</strong> and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission overheating stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>The transmission is too hot. In these extreme conditions the transmission will disengage drive in order to prevent damage due to overheating. You will not be able to drive until the transmission has cooled. Select <strong>N (NEUTRAL)</strong> or <strong>P (PARK)</strong> and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission malfunction service now</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission too hot press brake</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further overheating. Select <strong>N (NEUTRAL)</strong> or <strong>P (PARK)</strong> and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission limited function check handbook</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
At low outside temperatures, after starting the engine, it may take the transmission several seconds to engage **R (REVERSE)** or **D (DRIVE)**. Keep the brake pedal depressed until these messages disappear from the display.

See **Automatic Transmission** (page 141). See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 127).

### Tyre pressure monitoring system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check tyre pressures</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>The pressure in one or more tyres has dropped. Check as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure sys malfunction service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Permanent malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by a properly trained technician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside air
Keep the air intakes forward of the windscreen free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated air

CAUTION

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for defrosting and demisting the windscreen.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter the vehicle.

Heating
Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

Air conditioning

Note: The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C (39°F).

Note: If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of the vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

General information on controlling the interior climate
Fully close all the windows.

Warming the interior
Direct the air towards your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air towards the windscreen and the door windows.

Cooling the interior
Direct the air towards your face.

AIR VENTS

Centre air vents

AIR VENTS
Climate Control

Side air vent

Second row air vents

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

Air distribution control

A  Face level
B  Face level and footwell
C  Footwell
D  Footwell and windscreen
E  Windscreen

You can set the air distribution control to any position between the symbols.
Climate Control

**Blower**

A

Off

**Note:** If you switch the blower off, the windscreen may mist up.

**Recirculated air**

Press the button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

**Heating the interior quickly**

**Ventilation**

Set the air distribution control, blower and air vents to suit your requirements.

**Air conditioning**

**Switching the air conditioning on and off**

A/C

If you turn the blower off, the air conditioning will turn off. When you turn the blower on again, the air conditioning will come on automatically.

**Cooling with outside air**

**Cooling the interior quickly**
Climate Control

With the heater control in this position, the air conditioning and recirculated air will switch on automatically.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off.

**Defrosting and demisting the windscreen**

When the temperature is above 4°C (39°F), the air conditioning will switch on automatically. Make sure that the blower is on. The indicator in the switch will illuminate during defrosting and demisting.

If you move the air distribution control to a position other than windscreen, the A/C will remain on.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off while the air distribution control is set to windscreen.

If necessary, switch the heated windows on. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 105).

**Reducing interior air humidity**

The system controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the air flow automatically and adjusts them according to the driving and weather conditions. Pressing the **AUTO** button once switches on the auto mode.

The system in your vehicle is dual-zone automatic climate control. When the system is in mono mode, all the temperature zones are linked to the driver's zone. When you switch mono mode off, the dual-zone system allows you to set different temperatures for the driver's and front passenger's side.

**Note:** Avoid adjusting the settings when the vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The automatic climate control adjusts to the current circumstances automatically.

For the system to function properly, the side and centre vents should be fully open.

**Note:** The sunload sensor is located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor with any objects.

**Note:** At low outside temperatures, when the system is in auto mode, the air stream will be directed to the windscreen and the side windows as long as the engine is cold.
**Climate Control**

### Setting the temperature

You can set the temperature between 15.5°C (60°F) and 29.5°C (85°F) in steps of 0.5°C (1°F). In position **LO**, 15°C (59°F), the system will switch to permanent cooling. In position **HI**, 30°C (86°F), the system will switch to permanent heating.

**Note**: If either position **LO** or **HI** is selected, the system will not regulate a stable temperature.

### Mono mode

In mono mode, the temperature settings for both the driver’s and passenger’s side are linked. If you adjust the temperature using the rotary control on the driver’s side, the settings will be adjusted to the same setting on the passenger’s side. In mono mode, **MONO** appears in the display.

**To switch mono mode off**

Select a temperature for the passenger’s side with the rotary control on the passenger’s side. Mono mode will switch off and **MONO** disappears from the display. The temperature for the driver’s side will remain unchanged. You can now adjust the driver and passenger side temperatures independently of each other. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display. You can set a temperature difference of up to 4°C (8°F).

**Note**: If you set a temperature difference of greater than 4°C (8°F), the temperature on the other side will be adjusted so that the difference remains 4°C (8°F).

**To switch mono mode back on**

To switch mono mode back on, press the **MONO** button. **MONO** reappears in the display and the passenger’s side temperature will be adjusted to the driver’s side temperature.

### Blower

Use the buttons to adjust the blower speed. The blower setting is indicated in the display.

To return to auto mode, press the **AUTO** button.

### Air distribution

To adjust air distribution, press the desired button. Any combination of settings can be selected simultaneously.

When you select windscreen defrosting and demisting, **A**, **B** and **C** switch off automatically and the air conditioning switches on. Outside air will flow into the vehicle. You cannot select recirculated air.

---

**Note**: If you set one of the sides to **HI** or **LO**, both sides will be set to **HI** or **LO**.
Windscreen defrosting and demisting

Press the windscreen defrosting and demisting button. Outside air will flow into the vehicle. Air conditioning is automatically selected. As long as the air distribution is set to this position, you cannot select recirculated air.

The blower speed and the temperature control operate automatically and cannot be adjusted manually. The blower is set to high speed and the temperature to HI.

When you select windscreen defrosting and demisting, the heated screens switch on automatically and switch off after a short time.

To return to auto mode, press the AUTO button.

Switching the air conditioning on and off

Press the A/C button to switch the air conditioning on and off. A/C OFF appears in the display when the air conditioning is switched off. A/C ON appears in the display when the air conditioning is switched on.

Recirculated air

Press the recirculated air button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

Note: When the system is in auto mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are quite hot, the system selects recirculated air automatically to maximise cooling of the interior. Once the selected temperature is reached, the system will reselect outside air automatically.

Switching off the automatic climate control

Press the OFF button. When switched off, the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is switched off and recirculated air is selected.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windscreen or rear window.

Note: The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.

Heated windshield

Heated rear window

Vehicles without auxiliary heater

If the ambient temperature is below 5°C (41°F) and the engine coolant is below 65°C (149°F), the heated windshield and heated rear window will switch on automatically. They will switch off automatically.

Heated exterior mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.
AUXILIARY HEATER

Parking heater

WARNINGS

The parking heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapours or dust or in enclosed spaces.

The parking heater should be switched on for approximately 10 minutes at least once a month all year round. This prevents the water pump and heater motor from seizing.

Note: The parking heater will only operate if there is at least 7.5 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the fuel tank and the ambient temperature is below 15°C (59°F). The heater will not operate if the battery is low.

Note: The heating depends on the outside air temperature.

Note: When the parking heater is activated, exhaust fumes may come from under the sides of the vehicle. This is normal.

Note: On vehicles with manual climate control the heating of the vehicle interior is dependent on the temperature, air distribution and blower control settings.

The parking heater operates independently of the vehicle heater by heating the engine’s coolant circuit. It is fed from the vehicle fuel tank. You can also use it while the vehicle is in motion to help the vehicle heater warm up the interior more quickly.

Used properly, the parking heater provides the following benefits:

- It preheats the interior of the vehicle.
- It keeps the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevents condensation.
- It avoids cold starts and allows the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

To prevent the battery from discharging:

- Once the parking heater has performed one heating cycle, the next programmed heating cycle will only be carried out if you have started the vehicle’s engine in between.
- After a heating cycle, drive the vehicle for at least the period of the heating cycle.

Programming the parking heater

Note: The programmed time is the time at which you wish the vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not the time at which the heater switches on.

Note: You must programme the times at least 70 minutes in advance of the time you wish to set.

Note: You must set the time and date correctly. See Clock (page 122).

To programme the heating times:

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu. See Information Displays (page 83).
2. Select the park heater option.
Climate Control

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Select the first programme time list.
3. Highlight the day on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
4. Press the OK button.
5. Continue in the same way to select all the days on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
6. To set the time at which the vehicle should be warmed up, highlight the time at the top of the display and press the OK button. The hours start to flash.
7. Adjust the hours and minutes as necessary.

You can use the second programme time list to set a second cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day. The programming procedure is the same as for the first programme timer.

Deactivating the programmed heater

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Uncheck the active program session.

Programming the heater for a single cycle

1. Select Once and press the right arrow button.
2. Press the OK button and set the required time and date.
3. Press OK to confirm the set time and date.

Activating the heater manually

Highlight Heat now and press the OK button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

To deactivate the heater, uncheck the Heat now function.

The two time functions allow you to programme up to two heating cycles for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the heater will warm up the vehicle at these times on these days every week.

The function once allows you to programme one heating cycle for one specific day.

The function Heat now automatically switches on the heater.

Programming the functions Program 1 and Program 2

- The function Program 1
- The function Program 2
- The function Once
- The function Heat now
Fuel operated heater (depending on country)

**WARNING**
The fuel operated heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapours or dust or in enclosed spaces.

The fuel operated heater aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature, unless you have deactivated it.

To deactivate the fuel operated heater:
1. Highlight **Aux. Heater** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country)
The diesel auxiliary heater (PTC electrical heater) aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature, the coolant temperature and the alternator load.
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

Max. 30°

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you:

- sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.
- keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 250 millimetres (10 inches) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

Moving the seats backwards and forwards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Seats

Adjusting the lumbar support

Adjusting the height of the driver’s seat

Adjusting the angle of the seatback

HEAD RESTRAINTS

Adjusting the head restraint

WARNINGs

⚠️ Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.

⚠️ When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.
Removing the head restraint

Press the locking buttons and remove the head restraint.

POWER SEATS
REAR SEATS

WARNINGS

⚠️ When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

⚠️ Rock the seat backwards and forwards after moving to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.

⚠️ Make sure the rear of the seat is free from obstruction when moving it rearwards.

⚠️ When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

Note: Fully lower the head restraint when folding the seats. See Head Restraints (page 110).

Second row seats - C-MAX

Comfort seat system

WARNING

⚠️ Do not slide the outboard seats rearwards into the comfort position if the centre seat is folded forwards. There is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or if the centre seat falls back down.

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not fold the seatback forward when the seat is fully to the rear in the comfort position. Slide the seat fully forwards.

The centre seat can be folded up and the outboard seats moved rearwards and slightly inboard to provide more leg and shoulder room for the rear passengers.

1. Remove the luggage cover. See Luggage Covers (page 163).

2. Pull the release lever on the underside of the seat.

Note: The complete seat will move rearwards as the seat cushion is folded up.
3. Fold the seat back until it engages.

4. Pull the lever on the outer front edge of the outboard seats and push the seats rearwards.

To return the seats to the forward position, pull the lever and slide the seats forwards.

To return the centre seat to its original position, pull the lever on the underside of the seat. Fold the centre seat forwards and push it back down fully until it engages.

Install the luggage cover. See Luggage Covers (page 163).

**Folding the seatbacks down**

**WARNING**

![Warning symbol]

Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** All three seatbacks can be folded forward independently of one another.

**Note:** A table surface and cup holders are located on the rear of the centre seatback.

Remove the seat belts from the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks. The seat belt tongues must be inserted into the retaining slots. See Fastening the seat belts (page 29).

Pull the lever on the side of the seatback and fold the seatback forwards. Push it down until it engages.
Folding the seatbacks up

**WARNING**

Make sure the seatback is fully engaged in its latch.

**Note:** When in use, the rear seat belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks. See *Fastening the seat belts* (page 29).

Pull the lever on the seatback and lift the seatback up.

**Folding the seats forward**

**Note:** To increase the space in the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be folded forward.

**Note:** All three seats can be folded forward independently of one another.

**Note:** If one or both outboard seats is to be folded forward together with the centre seat, fold the centre seat forward first.

**Note:** If only the outboard seats are to be folded forward, the centre seatback must be left in the upright position.

Fold the seatback down. See *Folding the seatbacks down*.

**WARNING**

Always attach the retaining strap to the front head restraint when a rear seat is folded forwards.

Pull the lower bar on the rear of the seats to release them from the floor and fold the seats forward.

![Diagram of seatbacks being folded up and down.]

E135808

E135808

E135956

E135956

E135957

E135957
Pull out and attach the retaining straps to the front head restraints to hold the folded seats in the upright position.

**Returning the seats to the seating position**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.

⚠️ Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.

⚠️ When the retaining strap is detached from the head restraint, it will recoil back into the seat.

**Note:** If one or both outboard seats are folded forward together with the centre seat, the outboard seats must be folded back down first.

Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position. Detach the retaining straps.

**WARNING**

⚠️ Make sure the seat is securely locked by pushing forward and rearward on the top of the seatback or by trying to pull up the edge of the cushion.
Fold the seats back down until they engage.

Raise the seatbacks. See **Folding the seatbacks up**.

Install the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

**Removing the seats**

**WARNING**

The rear seats are heavy. To avoid injury, take care when lifting the seats.

**Note:** To increase the space in the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be removed completely.

1. Fold the seat forward. See **Folding the seats forward**.

2. Fold the seat up to an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the floor.

**Installing the seats**

**WARNINGS**

- To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.
- Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.

**Note:** Make sure the locking mechanism is fully open.
Holding the seat at an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the floor, lower the seat onto the retaining bar.

Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position. Push the seat back down until it engages.

Second row seats - Grand C-MAX

Folding the seatback forwards or backwards

Lift the lever and push the seatback. It will move in steps.

Stowing the centre seat

**WARNING**

Make sure the centre seat back is in the upright position when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** You can use the space between the outboard seats to access the third row seats when the centre seat has been stowed.
1. Pull the lever on the back of the centre seat and push the seatback down until it locks.

Moving the seats backwards and forwards

Note: If the centre seat is not stowed it will move with the right-hand seat.

2. Pull the strap and lift the right-hand seat cushion.

Folding the seats forward

WARNING

Do not use the third row seats when the second row seats have been folded forward.

CAUTION

The centre seat must be stowed into the right-hand seat base before the right-hand seat is folded.

3. Pull the strap to fold the centre seat over into the right-hand seat base.
4. Fold the right-hand seat cushion down.
1. Pull the strap and lift the cushion.
2. Lift the lever and push the seatback down until it locks.

**Easy entry position**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not use the seat when it is in the easy entry position.

**Note:** You can move the outboard seats forwards to allow access to the third row seats.

---

1. Either pull the lever on the side of the seat cushion or pull the strap at the rear of the seat. The seat will move forward.
2. Fold the seatback forward.

**Third row seats - Grand C-MAX**

**Note:** Remove the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 163).

**Note:** When not in use, the seat belts should be placed in the clips on the outboard trim. See **Fastening the seat belts** (page 29).

**Folding the seats flat**

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ When transporting a load with the seats folded flat, fold the relevant carpet forwards to cover the folded seat back.

⚠️ Do not place heavy objects in the area marked on the carpet.
Pull the strap at the top of the seatback and fold the seatback forward.

**HEATED SEATS**

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.

The maximum temperature is reached after five or six minutes. It is regulated thermostatically.

The seat heating will operate only when the ignition is on.
SUN SHADES

Side windows

Pull the blind up and attach it to the hooks (A).

Roof

WARNING

Do not operate the sun blind unless it is free from obstruction.

Note: If you operate the switch often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

Note: The sun blind can only be operated when the ignition is on.

Opening and closing the sun blind

Press to close

Press to open

Opening and closing the sun blind manually

Press and hold the switch to the first action point. Release it to stop the blind.
**Convenience features**

**Opening and closing the sun blind automatically**
Press the switch to the second action point and release it. Press it again to stop the blind.

**Note:** If this does not operate correctly, follow the relearning procedure below.

**Anti-trap function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sun blind will stop automatically while opening or closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Sun blind relearning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The relearning process must be started no later than 30 seconds after turning the ignition on.

In case the blind no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press switch **B** to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press switch **A** to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold switch **B** to the first action point, until the blind fully opens.
4. Press and hold switch **A** to the first action point, until the blind fully closes.

If step 2 is not completed within 15 seconds of step 1, the relearning function will be interrupted. Turn the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then turn the ignition back on again. Start the procedure once more from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning has been completed by using automatic opening and closing.

**INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER**

**CLOCK**
See *Information Displays* (page 83).

**CIGAR LIGHTER**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Convenience features

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 15 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

**AUXILIARY POWER POINTS**

**CAUTION**

⚠️ If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

Auxiliary power sockets are located in the centre console and in the luggage compartment.

**Power inverter**

### CAUTIONS

⚠️ If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

⚠️ If the LED flashes continuously, re-insert the plug or switch the ignition off and then on again.

⚠️ It will switch off if the temperature is above 85°C (185°F). The LED will flash once. When it has cooled down it will switch back on automatically.

⚠️ Do not exceed the maximum power output. If you do, the LED will flash twice. Remove the plug and re-insert it.

⚠️ If the LED flashes three or four times, have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 230 volt appliances that have a maximum rating of 150 watts.

**CUP HOLDERS**

### WARNING

⚠️ Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.
**Convenience features**

**Seat back trays**

**WARNING**

Do not use the trays when the vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the lowered position before setting off.

---

**STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**

**Rear storage compartment**

---

**GLASSES HOLDER**

---

E72630

E72982

E75193

E91508

124
Convenience features

CHILD MINDER MIRROR

AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX IN) SOCKET

See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235).

USB PORT
Convenience features

2. Adjust the holder to the desired position.
3. Lock.

Note: Make sure that the navigation unit holder is locked in position.

FLOOR MATS

WARNING

When using the floor mats, always make sure the floor mat is properly secured using the appropriate fixings and positioned so that it does not interfere with the operation of the pedals.

SATELLITE NAVIGATION UNIT HOLDER

Adjusting the holder

1. Unlock.

See Connectivity (page 257).
GENERAL INFORMATION

General points on starting

If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometres (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery.

This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

Starting the engine by towing or pushing

**WARNING**

To prevent damage you must not push or tow start your vehicle. Use booster cables and a booster battery. See Jump-Starting the Vehicle (page 197).

IGNITION SWITCH

**WARNING**

Never return the key to position 0 or I when the vehicle is in motion.

E72128

0 The ignition is off.

I The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

II The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

III The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

**WARNING**

Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

Vehicles without keyless starting

To activate the steering wheel lock:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Turn the steering wheel.

Vehicles with keyless starting

**Note:** The steering wheel lock will not activate when the ignition is on or the vehicle is moving.

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock. This operates automatically.

The steering wheel lock will activate after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside of the vehicle, or when you lock the vehicle. See Keyless Entry (page 43).

Deactivating the steering wheel lock

Switch the ignition on, or:

Vehicles with automatic transmission
- Press the brake pedal.

Vehicles with manual transmission
- Press the clutch pedal.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING A PETROL ENGINE

Note: You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.

Cold or hot engine

All vehicles

CAUTION

When the temperature is below -20°C (-4°F), switch the ignition on for at least one second before starting the engine. This will make sure that the maximum fuel pressure is established for starting the engine.

Vehicles with manual transmission

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

All vehicles

If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the Flooded engine procedure.

Flooded engine

Vehicles with manual transmission
1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

All vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the Cold or hot engine procedure.

Engine idle speed after starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will vary depending on the engine temperature.

If the engine is cold then the idle speed will automatically be increased in order to heat the catalytic converter as quickly as possible. This makes sure that vehicle emissions are kept to an absolute minimum.

The idle speed will slowly decrease to the normal level as the catalytic converter warms up.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or hot engine

All vehicles

Note: When the temperature is below -15°C (5°F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 25 seconds.
**Starting and Stopping the Engine**

*Note:* Continue cranking the engine until it starts.

*Note:* You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.

Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

**Vehicles with manual transmission**

*Note:* Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission**

1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

**KEYLESS STARTING**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

⚠️ Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. See *Steering Wheel Lock* (page 127).

*Note:* The ignition may automatically switch off after a period of time if your vehicle has been left unattended with the ignition on. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

*Note:* A valid passive key must be located inside the vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

*Note:* To start your engine you must also fully depress the brake or clutch pedal, depending on the transmission fitted.

**Ignition on**

Press the start button once. All electrical circuits are operational, warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**Starting with automatic transmission**

*Note:* Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Make sure the transmission is in **P** or **N**.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the start button.

**Starting with manual transmission**

*Note:* Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Press the start button.

**Starting a diesel engine**

*Note:* Engine cranking may not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

*Note:* Continue to press the clutch or brake pedal until engine cranking begins.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

Failure to start

The passive starting system will not function if:
• The passive key frequencies are jammed.
• The passive key battery is flat.
If you are unable to start your vehicle carry out the following procedure.

1. Carefully prise out the cover.

2. Insert the key into the key holder.

3. With the key in this position you can use the start button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary

Note: The ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

Manual transmission

Press the start button.

Automatic transmission

1. Move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the start button.

Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the start button for two seconds, or press twice within two seconds.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction systems fitted to your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

Regeneration

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**CAUTION**

Avoid running out of fuel.

*Note:* During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odour and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

*Note:* After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to support the regeneration process.

If you drive only short distances or your journeys contain frequent stopping and starting, where there is increased acceleration and deceleration, occasional trips with the following conditions will assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or motorway, for up to 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch off the ignition.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed during this journey, where appropriate.

**SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**

*Vehicles with a turbocharger*

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

**ENGINE BLOCK HEATER**

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Make sure you disconnect the power cable from the engine heater connector before driving away.

*Note:* The engine heater connector is located in the front bumper.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

Connect the engine heater for two to three hours before starting the engine.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

CAUTION

For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when the vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when the driver presses the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the gear lever to the neutral position and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

USING START-STOP

WARNINGS

⚠️ The engine may restart automatically if required by the system. See Principle of Operation (page 133).

⚠️ Switch the ignition off before opening the bonnet or carrying out any maintenance.

⚠️ Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

Note: The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is between 0°C (32°F) and 30°C (86°F).

Note: If you stall the engine, and then depress the clutch pedal within a couple of seconds, the system will automatically restart the engine.

Note: The Start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).

Note: The Start-stop indicator will flash amber, requiring you to select neutral or depress the clutch pedal. In conjunction a message will be shown in the display.

Note: If the system detects a malfunction, it is deactivated. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

Note: If you have switched the system off, the switch will be illuminated.

Note: The system is on by default. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be de-activated for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location. See At a Glance (page 10).

To stop the engine

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver's door has been opened.
• Low engine operating temperature.
• Low brake system vacuum.
• If a road speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) has not been exceeded.

**To re-start the engine**

**Note:** The gear lever must be in the neutral position.

Depress the clutch pedal.
The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:
• Low battery voltage.
• To maintain the interior climate.
Eco Mode

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system assists the driver to drive more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds on motorways and open roads.

*Note:* These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving disciplines but also influenced by many other factors such as short journeys and cold starts.

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel consumption.

![Petals A, B, C]

- **A:** Gear shifting
- **B:** Anticipation
- **C:** Efficient speed

**Gear shifting**

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

**Anticipation**

Adjusting your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration will improve fuel consumption.

**Efficient speed**

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reducing your cruising speed on open roads will improve fuel consumption.

**USING ECO MODE**

The system is accessed using the trip computer menu. See *Trip Computer* (page 89).

Press the **SET/RESET** button to enter Eco mode. Use the rotary control to view individual screens and additional tips on how to improve your fuel consumption.

**Resetting Eco mode**

Reset the average fuel consumption.

*Note:* New values may take a short time to calculate.
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

⚠️ Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

⚠️ Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

FUEL QUALITY - PETROL

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not use leaded petrol or petrol with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded petrol that meets the specification defined by EN 228, or equivalent.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNING

⚠️ Do not mix diesel with oil, petrol or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Do not add kerosene, paraffin or petrol to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

Note: The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Ford is not recommended.

Note: We do not recommend the prolonged use of additives intended to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-term storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

⚠️ Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a catalytic converter

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Avoid running out of fuel.

⚠️ Do not crank the engine for long periods.

⚠️ Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.
Fuel and Refuelling

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See Jump-Starting the Vehicle (page 197).

⚠️ Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

FUEL FILLER FLAP

WARNINGS

⚠️ Take care when refuelling to avoid spilling any residual fuel from the fuel nozzle.

⚠️ Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

CAUTION

⚠️ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 200 millimetres (8 inches).

Note: The sliding door is inhibited from opening fully when the fuel filler flap is open.

1. Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.

2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.

WARNING

⚠️ Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.
3. Do not lift the nozzle during refilling. This can affect the flow of fuel and shut off of the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

4. Operate the nozzle within the area shown.

**WARNINGS**

- We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.
- Do not remove the nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refuelling process.

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

**Refuelling with a fuel can**

Use the funnel which is located in the glove box.

**CAUTION**

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

**FUEL CONSUMPTION**

The CO2 and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to EEC Directive 80/1268/EEC and subsequent amendments and are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including; driving style, high speed driving, stop/start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted and towing etc.
Your Ford dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**C-MAX**

**Fuel Consumption Figures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Urban</th>
<th>Extra-Urban</th>
<th>Combined</th>
<th>CO2 Emissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>g/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma Stage V</td>
<td>8.7 (32.5)</td>
<td>5.3 (53.3)</td>
<td>6.6 (42.8)</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma Stage V, vehicles without start-stop</td>
<td>8.8 (32.1)</td>
<td>5.3 (53.3)</td>
<td>6.6 (42.8)</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma Stage V, vehicles with start-stop</td>
<td>8 (35.3)</td>
<td>5.3 (53.3)</td>
<td>6.4 (44.1)</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV Stage V, vehicles without start-stop</td>
<td>5.4 (52.3)</td>
<td>4.1 (68.9)</td>
<td>4.6 (61.4)</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV Stage V, vehicles with start-stop</td>
<td>5 (56.5)</td>
<td>4 (70.6)</td>
<td>4.4 (64.2)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, vehicles with manual transmission</td>
<td>6.4 (44.1)</td>
<td>4.4 (64.2)</td>
<td>5.1 (55.4)</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, vehicles with automatic transmission</td>
<td>7.1 (39.8)</td>
<td>4.8 (58.9)</td>
<td>5.6 (50.4)</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Grand C-MAX

### Fuel Consumption Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Urban</th>
<th>Extra-Urban</th>
<th>Combined</th>
<th>CO2 Emissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>g/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma Stage V</td>
<td>8.9 (31.7)</td>
<td>5.7 (49.6)</td>
<td>6.9 (40.9)</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma Stage V, vehicles without start-stop</td>
<td>9.2 (30.7)</td>
<td>5.5 (51.4)</td>
<td>6.9 (40.9)</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma Stage V, vehicles with start-stop</td>
<td>8.2 (34.5)</td>
<td>5.5 (51.4)</td>
<td>6.6 (42.8)</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV Stage V, vehicles without start-stop</td>
<td>5.8 (48.7)</td>
<td>4.4 (64.2)</td>
<td>4.9 (57.7)</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV Stage V, vehicles with start-stop</td>
<td>5.5 (51.4)</td>
<td>4.3 (65.7)</td>
<td>4.7 (60.1)</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, vehicles with manual transmission</td>
<td>6.6 (42.8)</td>
<td>4.5 (62.8)</td>
<td>5.3 (53.3)</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW Stage V, vehicles with automatic transmission</td>
<td>7.4 (38.2)</td>
<td>5 (56.5)</td>
<td>5.8 (48.7)</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MANUAL TRANSMISSION

**CAUTION**

Do not engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Selector lever positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gear</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Reverse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N  Neutral
D  Drive
S  Sport mode and manual shifting

**WARNING**

Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

**Note:** A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to creep when you have selected a drive gear.

Press the button on the selector lever to select reverse and park.

The selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

**Park**

**WARNINGS**

Select park only when your vehicle is stationary.

Apply the parking brake and select park before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the selector lever is latched in position.

**Note:** An audible warning will sound if you open the driver’s door and you have not selected park.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

**Reverse**

**WARNING**

Select reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.
Transmission

Neutral

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

Drive

Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.
The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and driver input.

Manual shifting - Vehicles with a 5 speed transmission

WARNING

Do not hold the selector lever permanently in – or +.

CAUTION

The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low and upshift when too high.

Note: A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

Note: In Select mode the current gear (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Move the selector lever to position S.
Push the selector lever forwards to shift down and pull it backwards to shift up.
Gears may be skipped by moving the selector lever repeatedly at short intervals.
Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See Kickdown.

Sport mode and manual shifting - Vehicles with a 6 speed transmission

Note: A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

Sport Mode

Note: In Sport mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

Note: In Sport mode S will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Activate Sport mode by moving the selector lever to position S. Sport mode will remain active until either you shift manually up or down the gears or return the selector lever to position D.

Manual shifting

WARNING

Do not hold the selector lever permanently in – or +.

CAUTION

The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low.

Push the selector lever forwards to shift down and pull it backwards to shift up.
Gears may be skipped by moving the selector lever repeatedly at short intervals.
Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See Kickdown.
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

CAUTION

Do not idle the engine for long periods of time in drive with the brakes applied.

Moving off
1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping
1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Select neutral or park.

Kickdown
Press the accelerator pedal fully with the selector lever in the drive position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

Emergency park position release lever
Use the lever to move the selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a flat battery.

Note: If position P is selected again, this procedure must be repeated.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash if you brake heavily.

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal and often does not indicate a concern. In normal operation, the system may emit occasional or intermittent squeal or groan noises when the brakes are applied. Such noises are usually caused by environmental conditions such as cold, heat, moisture, road dust, salt or mud.

Disc brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

ABS

WARNING

The ABS does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

When the ABS is operating, the brake pedal will pulse. This is normal. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

The ABS will not eliminate the dangers inherent when:

- you drive too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- the vehicle is aquaplaning.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING

Vehicles with an automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position P (Park).

- Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
- Pull the parking brake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or P (Park) and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or P (Park) and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic stability programme (ESP)

WARNING

ESP does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The ESP supports stability when the vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque and may brake individual wheels if they spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

Stability control (ESP) warning lamp

The ESP warning lamp will flash when the system is operating. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).

Emergency brake assist

WARNING

Emergency brake assist does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Emergency brake assist will detect when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It will provide maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Trailer stability control

WARNING

Trailer stability control does not relieve you of your responsibility to tow with due care and attention.

Trailer stability control is an enhanced feature of ESP, and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway.

If this situation occurs, the system will automatically brake individual wheels to stabilise the trailer and vehicle. In case a very severe sway is detected, the engine torque will be reduced and the vehicle will be slowed automatically.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Note: The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.

To turn the system off and on. See Information Displays (page 83).
Hill Start Assist

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

The system makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for a short time after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

**WARNING**

⚠️ The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

**USING HILL START ASSIST**

The system is activated automatically when you stop your vehicle on a slope greater than 3%. The system operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected and with the vehicle facing uphill if any forward gear is selected.

**Vehicles with manual transmission only**

The system can be switched on and off using the information display. See General Information (page 83).

**Activating the system**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the system.

**To activate the system:**

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope the system will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for a short time. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

**Deactivating the system**

To deactivate the system, perform one of the following:

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

⚠️ If a malfunction is detected when the system is active, the system will be deactivated and a message will be shown in the display. See Information Messages (page 90).

You can activate the system only if the following conditions have been met:

- The engine is running.
- The system is switched on.
- On vehicles with manual transmission, the clutch pedal is pressed.
- No failure mode is present.
Hill Start Assist

- Wait for a short time until the system deactivates automatically.
- If a forward gear was selected when the system became active, select reverse gear.
- If reverse gear was selected when the system became active, select a forward gear.
Parking Aids

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

CAUTIONS

- Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly detect obstacles.
- The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.
- The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.
- The parking aid does not detect obstacles moving away from the vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move towards the vehicle again.
- If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).
- Parking aid sends tones via the audio system fitted and approved by us. If this is not working the parking aid system will not work.

Note: On vehicles fitted with a tow ball arm, the rear parking aid is deactivated automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.

Note: Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

Note: The parking aid may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if the vehicle is fully laden.

USING THE PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: REAR PARKING AID

WARNING

The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The parking aid is automatically activated when you select reverse gear with the ignition switched on.

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimetres (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper and approximately 50 centimetres (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone.
Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.

A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimetres (11 inches) to the rear bumper.

Note: On Vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimetres (18 inches) from the rear bumper.

Malfunction indicator.

Note: If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the system is disabled.

USING THE PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT AND REAR PARKING AID

WARNING

The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Switching the parking aid on and off

The parking aid is per default off. To switch the parking aid on, select reverse gear or press the switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10).

The light in the switch illuminates when the parking aid is activated.

To turn it off, press the switch again.
**Parking Aids**

### Manoeuvring with the parking aid

![Diagram showing parking aid](E130381)

1. Reverse gear selected
2. Neutral or forward gear selected
A. Display and tone
B. Display and tone
C. Display only
D. Display and tone

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimetres (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper, approximately 80 centimetres (31 inches) between the obstacle and front bumper and approximately 50 centimetres (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone. A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimetres (11 inches) to the front or rear bumper.

**Note:** On vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimetres (18 inches) from the rear bumper.

You will hear an alternating tone from the front and rear if obstacles are closer than 30 centimetres (11 inches) to the front and rear bumpers.

![Distance Indicator](E130382)

A. Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.

![Malfunction Indicator](E130383)

A. Malfunction indicator.

**Note:** If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the rear sensors are disabled.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

⚠️ The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

⚠️ At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

⚠️ You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.

⚠️ Vehicles with overhanging loads, street furniture and other items may not be detected by the system. You must make sure that the selected space is suitable for parking.

⚠️ Do not use the system if a trailer is attached to the vehicle.

⚠️ Do not use the system if a bike rack is attached to the back of the vehicle.

⚠️ Do not use the system if an overhanging item is attached to the roof.

⚠️ If the maneuver is interrupted before completion, the system will be disabled. The steering wheel position will not indicate the true position of the steering and you will have to take control of the vehicle.

⚠️ Make sure that loose clothing, your hands or your arms do not get caught in the rotating steering wheel.

The system will detect a suitable parallel parking space and steer the vehicle into the space. The system controls the steering while the driver controls the accelerator, transmission and brakes. The maneuver can be stopped at any time by holding the steering wheel or pressing the active park assist switch. See At a Glance (page 10).

The system will visually and audibly instruct the driver throughout the procedure to safely park the vehicle.

USING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

CAUTIONS

⚠️ The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

⚠️ The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

⚠️ The sensors may not detect the kerb.

Note: If the traction control system is disabled active park assist will not be available. See General Information (page 83).

The system will not align the vehicle correctly if:

- a spare tyre, or a tyre worn significantly more than the other tyres is used
- the factory installed tyre size is not used on the vehicle
- the tyres skid
- you allow the vehicle to roll
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).
Active Park Assist

Move forwards at a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18 mph). Press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 10). Use the direction indicator lever to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of the vehicle.

**Note:** If no selection is made via the direction indicator lever the system will default to the passenger side of the vehicle.

The information and entertainment display will inform you and a chime will be heard when a suitable space is found. To park the vehicle, follow the instructions on the information and entertainment display.

**Note:** To disable the chimes: See **Personalised Settings** (page 89).

**Warning**

⚠️ If a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) is exceeded the system will be disabled and you will need to take full control of the vehicle.

Move the vehicle backwards cautiously using the accelerator and brake pedals to control the vehicle. Parking aid warning tones will sound. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.
You can take control of the manoeuvre by holding the steering wheel. A message may appear that the system can be resumed. To accept this message press the active park assist switch. See At a Glance (page 10).

Move the vehicle forwards. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone. Repeat the above steps until the vehicle is satisfactory parked. The display will indicate when the system has finished the manoeuvre.
Rear view camera

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The camera is a visual aid for use when reversing.

WARNING

⚠️ The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the camera briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).

⚠️ Do not apply pressure to the camera.

Note: Keep the camera free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects, degreaser, wax or organic products. Use only a soft cloth.

During operation, guide lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle’s path and approximate distance from rearward objects.

USING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

⚠️ The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

⚠️ The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.

⚠️ Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the luggage compartment lid near the handle.

Activating the rear view camera

CAUTION

⚠️ The camera may not detect objects that are close to the vehicle.

With the ignition and the audio unit switched on:

1. Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See At a Glance (page 10). Or,

2. Engage reverse gear.

The image is displayed on the screen. The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is activated.

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

• Dark areas.
• Intense light.
• If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
• If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
• If the camera’s view is obstructed, for example by mud.
Using the display

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.

⚠️ Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show a projected vehicle path (based on the current steering wheel angle) and the distance from the exterior mirrors and rear bumper.

- **A** Exterior mirror clearance - 0.1 metre (4 inches)
- **B** Red - up to 0.3 (12 inches)
- **C** Amber - 0.3 - 0.6 metre (12 - 24 inches)
D Green - 0.6 - 0.9 metre (24 - 35 inches)

E Amber - centre line of the projected vehicle path

**Note:** The green line is extended from 0.9 metre (35 inches) up to a distance of 3.2 metres (126 inches).

**Note:** When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show the vehicle direction and not the trailer.

### Deactivating the rear view camera

**Note:** Disengage reverse gear. The display will stay on for a short period before switching off.

**Note:** The system will automatically switch off once the vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).

Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 10).

### Vehicles with parking aid

The display will additionally show a coloured distance bar. This guide indicates the distance from the rear bumper to the detected obstacle.

These are colour coded as follows:

- **Green** - 0.6 to 1.8 metres (24 - 71 inches).
- **Amber** - 0.3 to 0.6 metre (12 - 24 inches).
- **Red** - 0.3 metre (12 inches) or less.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNING

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisty roads or when the road surface is slippery.

Switching cruise control on

Note: The system is ready for you to set a speed.

Setting a speed

Press the SET+ switch or the SET- switch to store and maintain your current speed. The cruise control indicator will illuminate. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 79).

Changing the set speed

WARNING

When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear and press the SET- switch to assist the system in maintaining the set speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.

Cancelling the set speed

Press the brake pedal or pull the CAN switch.
**Note:** The system will no longer control your speed. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate but the system will retain the speed that you previously set.

**Resuming the set speed**

Pull the **RES** switch.

The cruise control indicator will illuminate and the system will attempt to resume the speed that you previously set.

**Switching cruise control off**

The system will not retain the speed that you previously set. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of the vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

USING THE SPEED LIMITER

**Note:** The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period if required, for example when overtaking.

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.

Switching the system on and off
Press switch **B**. The information display will prompt for a speed to be set.

Setting the speed limit
Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.

Press switch **A** or switch **C** to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch **D** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm deactivation by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch **D** again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm the system is active by showing the set speed again.

Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit
Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily deactivate the system. The system will reactivate once the vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System warnings
If the set limit is accidentally exceeded, for example driving downhill, the information display will show the set speed flashing together with an audible warning chime.

If the set limit is intentionally exceeded the information display will show the set speed crossed out.

### Switching the system on and off
- **A** Set speed increase
- **B** Speed limiter on/off
- **C** Set speed decrease
- **D** Speed limiter cancel/resume
Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

⚠️ Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

⚠️ Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

⚠️ Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

⚠️ Do not drive with the tailgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle.

⚠️ Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See Vehicle Identification Plate (page 214).

⚠️ Heavy loads, when placed in the passenger compartment, should be on or behind folded rear seats as shown. See Rear Seats (page 112).

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

C-Max

Grand C-Max

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

Note: Item D is available only on vehicles with a tyre repair kit.
Load Carrying

A  C-MAX
B  C-MAX and Grand C-MAX
C  Grand C-MAX
D  C-MAX
Load Carrying

**LUGGAGE COVERS**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not place objects on the luggage cover.

Pull out the cover and secure it in the retaining points.
Release it from the retaining points and let it roll back into the case. Clip the retaining hook onto the case.

To remove or install the cover, push either end of the case inwards.

---

**REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE**

**WARNING**

⚠️ When you are using a child restraint with a support leg on a second row seat, make sure that you locate the support leg securely on the under floor storage compartment lid. Make sure that you install the foam spacer correctly inside the storage compartment and that you position the lid correctly.

---

**CARGO NETS**

**C-MAX**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Luggage retention net anchor points are not fitted behind the first or second row seats.
Load Carrying

Grand C-MAX

WARNING

Luggage retention net anchor points are not fitted behind the first row seats, but are fitted behind the second row seats.

Luggage retention net
Installing the net

CAUTIONS

Do not move the rear seats when the cargo net is installed.

Do not use the cargo net if the third row seats are in use.

1. Push the ends of the upper bar towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See Luggage Anchor Points (page 161).

3. Tighten the belts.
Load Carrying

Removing the net

1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

Roof rack

WARNINGS

⚠️ If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

⚠️ Read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 75 kilograms (165 pounds) (including the roof rack).

Check the security of the roof rack and tighten its fittings as follows:

• before starting
• after driving 50 kilometres (30 miles)
• at 1000 kilometres (600 miles) intervals.

To reduce fuel consumption, cross rails should be removed when not in use.

Installing the crossbars

WARNING

⚠️ Distribute the load evenly over the loading area and keep the centre of gravity as low as possible. Secure the load well to prevent it from slipping. Never place any loads directly onto the roof surface.

CAUTION

⚠️ Remove the crossbars before entering an automatic car wash.

Note: The side mounting tracks are designed such that crossbars (for bicycle carriers, ski carriers etc.) from the Ford accessories range can be fitted.

Note: Before installing the crossbars, clean the side mounting tracks with water and a sponge.

Note: Position the crossbars as shown.

A 120 mm (4.7 inches)
B 800 mm (31.5 inches)
**Load Carrying**

**Note:** Adhesive pads are supplied to help reduce the buffeting noise.

**Note:** Make sure the surface of the crossbars is clean before attaching the adhesive pads.

1. Remove the backing and attach the adhesive pads to the crossbars in the positions shown.

2. Pull the handle out.

3. Turn the handle clockwise to bring the crossbar in contact with the rail.

4. Turn the handle a minimum of 3.5 revolutions.

5. Push the handle in. Turn the key clockwise to lock.

6. Remove the key.
Load Carrying

Accessing the T-notch

1. Pull the handle out.
2. Lower the cover.
3. Remove the sliding bar.

Installing a roof box

Make sure the adhesive pads are not in contact with the installation bolt.
Towing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

The rear tyre pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. See Vehicle identification (page 214).

CAUTION

Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, i.e. vertical weight on the tow ball, of 75 kilogrammes (165 pounds).

Note: Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. Check with your dealer first.

Place loads as low and central to the axle(s) of the trailer as possible. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in the trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

The stability of the vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependant on the quality of the trailer.

In high altitude regions above 1000 metres (3281 feet), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every additional 1000 metres (3281 feet).

Steep gradients

WARNING

The overrun brake on a trailer is not controlled by ABS.

Change down a gear before you reach a steep downhill gradient.

RETRACTABLE TOW BALL

CAUTION

Only move the tow ball arm with your hand. Never use your foot or auxiliary tools as damage to the mechanism may result.

You can turn the retractable tow ball arm through 90 degrees using the handwheel A.

A 13-pin trailer socket B is provided underneath the rear bumper next to the tow ball arm C.
Swivelling the tow ball in

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Keep your hands away from the handwheel as it rotates during the locking process.

⚠️ You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Before retracting the ball neck into its stowage position always unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments. Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilisation. Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the socket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the bumper.

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.

2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it anti-clockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into a midway position.

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimetres (0.2 inch) from its housing.
Towing

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the stowage position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.

5. Turn the key anti-clockwise and remove it.

Swivelling the tow ball out

**WARNING**

⚠️ You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.

2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it anti-clockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the midway position.

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimetres (0.2 inch) from its housing.

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the operating position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.

5. Turn the key anti-clockwise and remove it.
Driving with a trailer

**WARNING**

⚠️ If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- there is no warning tone when the locking procedure has been completed
- the handwheel is in its housing and that there is no gap
- you have locked the handwheel (anti-clockwise) and removed the key
- the tow ball arm is locked. It must not move when jerked.

**Maintenance**

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil them.

⚠️ Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the towing hitch.

⚠️ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, do not direct the spray onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm.
RUNNING-IN

Tyres

**WARNING**

New tyres need to be run-in for approximately 500 kilometres (300 miles). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and clutch

**WARNING**

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 kilometres (100 miles) in town and for the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles) on motorways.

Engine

**CAUTION**

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labour the engine.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -30°C (-22°F).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Driving through water

**CAUTIONS**

- Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.
- Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, the vehicle can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 200 millimetres (8 inches) and at a maximum speed of 10 km/h (6 mph). Extra caution should be exercised when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the vehicle. After driving through water, and as soon as it is safe to do so:
- Depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the vehicle's lights are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.
**FIRST AID KIT**

Space is provided in the under floor storage compartment to store a first aid kit. See [Rear Under Floor Storage](#) (page 163).

---

**WARNING TRIANGLE**

Slide the front seat fully rearwards. See [Seats](#) (page 109).

---

**EMERGENCY EXIT**

If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, occupants seated in the third row must evacuate the vehicle using the second row centre seat.

Pull the red handle and fold the seatback forward.
Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Engine compartment fuse box

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment. See Maintenance (page 185).

Passenger compartment fuse box

1. Pinch the retaining clips to release the cover.
2. Lower the fuse box cover and pull it towards you.

Install in the reverse order.

Load compartment fuse box

CHANGING A FUSE

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by a properly trained technician.

⚠️ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before touching or attempting to change a fuse.

CAUTION

⚠️ Fit a replacement fuse with the same rating as the one you have removed.

Note: You can identify a blown fuse by a break in the filament.

Note: All fuses, except high current fuses, are a push fit.

Note: A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse box.
**FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART**

Engine compartment fuse box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>ABS pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>ABS valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Headlamp washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Heater blower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Engine Control Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Starter relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Heated windscreen (right-hand side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Heated windscreen (left-hand side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fuel fired heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Windscreen wipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ABS ESP module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Stop lamp switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Battery monitoring system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Relay coils, light switch module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Rear power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Electric exterior mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Powertrain control module (PCM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Air conditioning clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>EGR Valve, swirl control valves, HEGO sensor (engine management)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Ignition Coils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Injectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Diesel filter heater, active grille shutters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Engine control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Engine control module, transmission control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Headlamp control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Electric power assisted steering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Body Control Module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Headlamp levelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Heated washer jets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Power windows (front)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Heated exterior mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Vapouriser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuses

Passenger compartment fuse box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fuel pump</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Passive anti theft system (PATS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Interior lamp, driver’s door switch pack, glove box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Cigar lighter, second row power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Rain sensor module, interior mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Liftgate release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Driver’s door lock, double locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Information and entertainment display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Steering column lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Instrument cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Central locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Air conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Steering wheel control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Alarm, on-board diagnostics II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Main beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Front fog lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Washer pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ignition switch or start button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Voice control module, radio, navigation system, DVD player, CD changer, door lock button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Interior motion sensor, RF receiver, sun blinds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Washer pump ground</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Central locking ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Driver's door lock and double locking ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Radio, navigation system, passenger airbag deactivation switch, heated front seats switch, parking heater, manual air conditioning heater module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Restraint system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Load compartment fuse box

![Load compartment fuse box](Image)

### Load compartment fuse box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Keyless vehicle module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Keyless vehicle door handles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Door module (left-hand front) (power windows, central locking, electric folding exterior mirror, heated exterior mirror)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Door module (right-hand front) (window up/down, central locking, electric folding mirror, heated mirror)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Door module (left-hand rear) (window up/down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Door module (right-hand rear) (window up/down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Security Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Electric driver's seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Power inverter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Power operated tailgate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Accessories, trailer module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Blind spot information system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Park aid Module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Rear view camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Power inverter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Heated driver's seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Heated front passenger seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sun blind system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle recovery

TOWING POINTS

Towing eye location

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.
The towing eye must **always** be carried in the vehicle.

Installing the towing eye

![Towing eye installation](image)

**CAUTION**

The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it **anti-clockwise** to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

**Note:** *On vehicles with a tow bar, the towing eye cannot be installed at the rear of the vehicle. Use the tow bar to tow a vehicle.*

Front towing eye

![Front towing eye](image)

Rear towing eye

![Rear towing eye](image)

Insert a suitable object into the hole on the underside of the cover and prise off the cover.
Install the towing eye.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

All vehicles

**WARNINGS**

- Switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. The steering lock will engage and the direction indicators and brake lamps will not work if you do not.

- The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.
Vehicle recovery

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

⚠️ Select neutral when your vehicle is being towed.

⚠️ In the event of a breakdown or mechanical failure do not use individual axle carriers. Your vehicle must be recovered with either **ALL** wheels on the ground or transported with **ALL** wheels lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is towing.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission**

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ If a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph) and a distance of 20 kilometres (12 miles) is to be exceeded **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

⚠️ It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h (12 mph) or further than 20 kilometres (12 miles).

⚠️ Do not tow your vehicle backwards.

⚠️ In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission do not use individual axle carriers. **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

⚠️ Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).
GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford Authorised Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialised tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

WARNINGS

⚠️ Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

⚠️ Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

⚠️ Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

CAUTION

⚠️ When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check when refuelling

- Engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 190).
- Brake fluid level. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 191).
- Washer fluid level. See Washer Fluid Check (page 192).
- Tyre pressures (when cold). See Technical Specifications (page 209).
- Tyre condition. See Wheels and Tyres (page 199).

Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See Engine Coolant Check (page 191).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of wheel nuts. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE BONNET

Opening the bonnet
Move the catch to the left.

Open the bonnet and support it with the strut.

**Closing the bonnet**

**WARNING**

Make sure that the bonnet is closed properly.

Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20 – 30 centimetres (8 - 11 inches).
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 191).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 191).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 190).
D  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 191).
E  Battery: See Vehicle battery (page 197).
F  Engine compartment fuse box: See Fuses (page 174).
G  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
H  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 190).
I  Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See Washer Fluid Check (page 192).

* For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in colour.
**UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL**

A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 191).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 191).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
D  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 191).
E  Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 197).
F  Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 174).
G  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
H  Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 190).
I  Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 192).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in colour.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 191).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 191).
C  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 190).
D  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 191).
E  Battery: See Vehicle battery (page 197).
F  Engine compartment fuse box: See Fuses (page 174).
G  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
H  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 190).
I  Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See Washer Fluid Check (page 192).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in colour.
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16VTI-VCT (SIGMA)

A B

MIN MAX

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL/2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL

A B

MIN MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5000 kilometres (3000 miles).

Checking the oil level

CAUTION

Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

Note: Check the level before starting the engine.

Note: Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

Note: Oil expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend a few millimetres beyond the MAX mark.

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, top up immediately.

Topping up

WARNINGS

Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Remove the filler cap.

CAUTION

Do not top up further than the MAX mark.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See Technical Specifications (page 192).

Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

CAUTION

Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.
ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

Checking the coolant level

WARNING

⚠️ Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

CAUTION

⚠️ Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the MAX mark.

If the level is at the MIN mark, top up immediately.

Topping up

WARNINGS

⚠️ Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

⚠️ Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

⚠️ Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.

⚠️ Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not top up further than the MAX mark.

Top up with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Ford specification. See Technical Specifications (page 192).

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

⚠️ Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford’s performance standards.

⚠️ Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

⚠️ If the level is at the MIN mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

Note: Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

Note: The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.
Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See Technical Specifications (page 192).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

Note: The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle fluids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Recommended fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - petrol and diesel engines</td>
<td>WSS-M2C913-C</td>
<td>Castrol or Ford Engine Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative engine oil - petrol engines only</td>
<td>WSS-M2C925-B</td>
<td>Castrol Engine Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antifreeze</td>
<td>WSS-M97B44-D</td>
<td>Motorcraft SuperPlus Anti-freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6</td>
<td>Motorcraft or Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do not use fluids which do not meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of unsuitable fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your Warranty.

Your engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

For petrol engines only, Ford and Castrol have developed a low friction SAE-5W-20 oil which offers further fuel economy benefits over the standard SAE-5W-30 oil. If this oil is not available, we recommend that you service with oil to specification WSS-M2C913-C.

Topping up the oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-C or WSS-M2C925-B (petrol engines only), you must use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Using topping up oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

Castrol engine oil recommended.
## Capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Capacity in Litres (gallons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All - Grand C-MAX</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>60 (13.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine - C-MAX</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>55 (12.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV, C-MAX</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>53 (11.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, C-MAX</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>60 (13.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Windscreen washer system - with headlamp washers</td>
<td>4.5 (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Windscreen washer system - without headlamp washers</td>
<td>3 (0.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>4.1 (0.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>Engine oil - without filter</td>
<td>3.75 (0.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>approx. 5.8 (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>4.1 (0.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>Engine oil - without filter</td>
<td>3.75 (0.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>approx. 6.3 (1.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>3.8 (0.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>Engine oil - without filter</td>
<td>3.5 (0.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>approx. 7.3 (1.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>5.7 (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>Engine oil - without filter</td>
<td>5.4 (1.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Capacity in Litres (gallons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>approx. 8.5 (1.9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Engine oil top up capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Capacity in litres (gallons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>0.7 (0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>0.8 (0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>1.6 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>1.8 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

WARNING
⚠️ If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windscreen.

CAUTIONS
⚠️ Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.
⚠️ Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.
⚠️ Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.
⚠️ Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the headlamps

CAUTIONS
⚠️ Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.
⚠️ Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

Cleaning the rear window

CAUTION
⚠️ Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the chrome trim

CAUTION
⚠️ Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Body paintwork preservation

CAUTIONS
⚠️ Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.
⚠️ Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.
⚠️ Do not apply polish to the windscreen or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Seat belts

WARNINGS
⚠️ Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.
⚠️ Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seat belt retractor mechanism.

Clean the seat belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the seat belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.
**Vehicle Care**

**Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Rear windows**

**CAUTIONS**

⚠️ Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

⚠️ Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

**REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE**

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Ford Dealer. Read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions.
JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNING

⚠️ Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

⚠️ Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

⚠️ Do not disconnect the battery from the vehicle’s electrical system.

To connect the booster cables

A Flat battery vehicle
B Booster battery vehicle
C Positive connection cable
D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D). See Battery connection points (page 198).
CAUTIONS

Do not connect to the negative (−) terminal of the flat battery.

Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To start the engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

CAUTION

Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

CAUTION

For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

Note: Where applicable, the audio system must be reprogrammed with the keycode.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See Maintenance (page 185).
Wheels and Tyres

GENERAL INFORMATION

CAUTIONS

⚠️ Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

⚠️ If you change the diameter of the tyres from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

⚠️ If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with your dealer.

Note: Check your tyre pressures regularly to optimise fuel economy.

A decal with tyre pressure data is located in the driver’s door opening at the B-pillar.

Check and set the tyre pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive the vehicle and when the tyres are cold.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

Locking wheel nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles with a spare wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

WARNINGS

⚠️ Drive the shortest possible distances.

⚠️ Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

⚠️ Do not carry out any tyre repairs on a spare wheel.

⚠️ Do not drive through an automatic car wash.

⚠️ If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

⚠️ Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

CAUTION

⚠️ The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a kerb.

Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Vehicle jack

WARNINGS

⚠️ The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.

⚠️ Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.

⚠️ Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.
Wheels and Tyres

**Note:** Vehicles with a tyre repair kit are not equipped with a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tyres.

**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 millimetres (3.1 inches).

**Vehicles without tyre repair kit**

Your vehicle jack, wheel brace, screw-in towing eye and wheel trim remover are located in the spare wheel well.

**Jacking and lifting points**

**CAUTION**

Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

---

A Emergency use only
B Maintenance
Wheels and Tyres

Assembling the wheel brace

**Type one**

![Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills](image) show the location of the jacking points.

*WARNING*

When returning the wheel brace extension to its original position, take care not to get your fingers caught.

*Note:* Make sure that the wheel brace is fully extended.

![Extend the wheel brace](image)

*CAUTION*

The screw-in towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it anti-clockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

![Insert the screw-in towing eye](image)

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.
Removing the wheel trim

**Type one**
Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the rim and the trim and carefully remove the trim.

**Type two**

![Image of wheel trim removal](image)

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

Removing a road wheel

**WARNINGS**

1. Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
2. Set up a warning triangle.
3. Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
4. Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.

**WARNINGS**

- If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.
- Have the passengers leave the vehicle.
- Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
- Make sure that the arrows on directional tyres point in the direction of rotation when the vehicle is moving forwards. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tyre refitted in the correct direction by a properly trained technician.
- Do not work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.
- Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

**CAUTION**

- Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking wheel nut key.
Wheels and Tyres

2. Slacken the wheel nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

**CAUTION**

Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**WARNINGS**

- Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 209).
- Do not fit run flat tyres on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact your dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

**Installing a road wheel**

**Note:** The wheel nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking wheel nut key.
4. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 209).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.
Wheels and Tyres

**WARNING**

Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

**TYRE REPAIR KIT**

Your vehicle may not have a spare tyre. In this case it will have an emergency tyre repair kit that can be used to repair one flat tyre. The tyre repair kit is located in the spare wheel well.

**General information**

**WARNINGS**

- Depending on the type and extent of tyre damage, some tyres can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tyre pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.
- Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has already been damaged as a result of being driven under inflated.
- Do not use the tyre repair kit on run flat tyres.
- Do not try to seal damage other than that located within the visible tread of the tyre.
- Do not try to seal damage to the tyre's sidewall.

The tyre repair kit seals most tyre punctures [with a diameter of up to six millimetres (1/4 inch)] to temporarily restore mobility.

Observe the following rules when using the kit:

- **Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving manoeuvres**, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tyre dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 200 kilometres (125 miles).
- Do not exceed a **maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph)**.
- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between −30°C (−22°F) and +70°C (+158°F).

**Using the tyre repair kit**

**WARNINGS**

- Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.
- Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended while in use.

**CAUTION**

Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes.

**Note:** *Use the tyre repair kit only for the vehicle with which it was supplied.*

- Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that the vehicle will not move.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tyre.
• Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example, inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine turned off.

• Replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle) is reached.

• Inform all other users of the vehicle that the tyre has been temporarily sealed with the tyre repair kit and make them aware of the special driving conditions to be observed.

**Inflating the tyre**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Check the sidewall of the tyre prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre.

⚠️ Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping.

⚠️ Watch the sidewall of the tyre. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve B. Do not continue driving with this tyre.

⚠️ The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

⚠️ If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within seven minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tyre.

---

**CAUTION**

⚠️ Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape.

---

![Diagram of the kit components](E94973)

A  Protective cap
B  Pressure relief valve
C  Hose
D  Orange cap
E  Bottle holder
F  Pressure gauge

---

205
Wheels and Tyres

G  Power plug with cable
H  Compressor switch
I  Label
J  Bottle lid
K  Sealant bottle

1. Open the lid of the tyre repair kit.
2. Peel off the label I showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver’s field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable G out of the kit.
4. Unscrew the orange cap D and the bottle lid J.
5. Screw the sealant bottle K clockwise into the bottle holder E fully tight.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
7. Detach the protective cap A from the hose C and screw the hose C firmly onto the valve of the damaged tyre.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch H is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug G into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See Cigar Lighter (page 122). See Auxiliary Power Points (page 123).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch H to position 1.
12. Inflate the tyre for no longer than seven minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch H to position 0 and check the current tyre pressure with pressure gauge F.
13. Remove the power plug G from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tyre valve and replace the protective cap A. Fasten the valve cap again.
15. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in the vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tyre pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately three kilometres (two miles) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

Note: When pumping in the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

WARNING

If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behaviour or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop the vehicle. Recheck the tyre and its pressure. If the tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tyre.

Checking the tyre pressure

1. Stop the vehicle after driving approximately three kilometres (two miles). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tyre.
2. Attach the kit and read the tyre pressure from the pressure gauge F.
3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tyre is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tyre.

5. Check the tyre pressure again from the pressure gauge F. If the tyre pressure is too high, deflate the tyre to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B.

6. Once you have inflated the tyre to its correct tyre pressure, move the compressor switch H to position 0, remove the power plug G from the socket, unscrew the hose C, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.

7. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E and store the kit away safely in its original location.

8. Drive to the nearest tyre specialist to get the damaged tyre replaced. Before the tyre is removed from the rim, inform your tyre dealer that the tyre contains sealant. Renew the kit as soon as possible after it has been used once.

Note: Remember that emergency roadside tyre repair kits only provide temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tyre repair after usage of tyre repair kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tyre specialist for advice.

WARNING

⚠️ Before driving, make sure the tyre is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 209). Monitor the tyre pressure until the sealed tyre is replaced.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to your dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

TYRE CARE

To make sure the front and rear tyres of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tyres from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 5000 and 10000 kilometres (3000 and 6000 miles).

CAUTION

⚠️ Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tyres when you are parking.

If you have to mount a kerb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the kerb.

Examine the tyres regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tyre pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.
USING WINTER TYRES

CAUTION

Make sure that you use the correct wheel nuts for the type of wheel the winter tyres are fitted to.

If winter tyres are used, make sure that the tyre pressures are correct. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS

- Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.
- Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

CAUTION

If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Note: The ABS will continue to operate normally.

Only use snow chains of 10 millimetre or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Vehicles with stability control (ESP)

Vehicles with stability control (ESP) may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics which can be reduced by switching traction control off. See Using Stability Control (page 145).

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

- The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to regularly check the tyre pressures.
- The system will only provide a low tyre pressure warning. It will not inflate the tyres.
- Do not drive on significantly under-inflated tyres. This may cause the tyres to overheat and fail. Under-inflation reduces fuel efficiency, tyre tread life and may also affect your ability to drive the vehicle safely.

CAUTIONS

- Do not bend or damage the valves when you are inflating the tyres.
- Have tyres installed by properly trained technicians.

The Deflation Detection System will alert you if there is a change of air pressure in any tyre. It does this by using the ABS sensors to detect the rolling circumference of the wheels. When the circumference changes, this indicates low pressure in a tyre, a warning message is displayed in the information display and the message indicator will illuminate. See Information Messages (page 90).

If a low pressure warning message is displayed in the information display, check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

If this happens frequently, have the cause determined and rectified as soon as possible.
Apart from a too low tyre pressure or a damaged tyre, the following situations can affect the rolling circumference:

- Vehicle load is uneven.
- When using a trailer or travelling up and down an incline.
- Using snow chains.
- Driving on soft surfaces such as snow or mud.

Note: The system will still function correctly, but there may be an increased detection time.

System reset

Note: Do not reset the system when the vehicle is moving.

Note: You should reset the system following any adjustment to the tyre pressures or any changing of tyres.

Note: Turn the ignition on.

1. Using the information display control, navigate to Settings > Driver assist > Deflation detection
2. Press and hold the OK button until confirmation appears.

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**Wheel nut torque**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wheel type</th>
<th>Nm (lb-ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>130 (96)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tyre pressures (cold tyres)**

**Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th></th>
<th>Full load</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bar (lbf/in²)</td>
<td>bar (lbf/in²)</td>
<td>bar (lbf/in²)</td>
<td>bar (lbf/in²)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>T125/80 R 16</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>T125/90 R 16</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
<td>4.2 (61)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Wheels and Tyres

## C-MAX

### Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>205/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>205/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only fit snow chains to specified tyres.

### Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Wheels and Tyres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front (bar (psi))</td>
<td>Rear (bar (psi))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.2 (32)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.2 (32)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Grand C-MAX

**Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front (bar (psi))</td>
<td>Rear (bar (psi))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>205/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>205/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Wheels and Tyres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front (psi)</td>
<td>Rear (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16*</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only fit snow chains to specified tyres.*

## Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front (psi)</td>
<td>Rear (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16VTi-VCT - Sigma</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.2 (32)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>205/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.2 (32)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Wheels and Tyres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th></th>
<th>Full load</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Front (bar (psi))</td>
<td>Rear (bar (psi))</td>
<td>Front (bar (psi))</td>
<td>Rear (bar (psi))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a diesel engine</td>
<td>215/55 R 16</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.6 (38)</td>
<td>3 (44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.1 (45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.1 (45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>215/50 R 17</td>
<td>2.5 (36)</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.1 (45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with a petrol engine</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.3 (33)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.2 (46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi - DV</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.2 (46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW</td>
<td>235/40 R 18</td>
<td>2.5 (36)</td>
<td>2.1 (31)</td>
<td>2.7 (39)</td>
<td>3.2 (46)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: The vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

Note: The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependant upon market requirements.

A  Model
B  Variant
C  Engine designation
D  Emission level
E  Vehicle identification number
F  Gross vehicle weight
G  Gross train weight
H  Maximum front axle weight
I  Maximum rear axle weight

The vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the lock side of the right-hand door aperture at the bottom.
The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle dimensions

#### C-MAX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum length</td>
<td>4380 (172.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width including exterior mirrors</td>
<td>2067 (81.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall height - EC kerb weight</td>
<td>1595 - 1626 (62.8 - 64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>2648 (104.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front track</td>
<td>1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear track</td>
<td>1554 - 1569 (61.2 - 61.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Grand C-MAX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum length</td>
<td>4520 (177.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width including exterior mirrors</td>
<td>2067 (81.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall height - EC kerb weight without roof bars</td>
<td>1653 - 1684 (65 - 66.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall height - EC kerb weight including roof bars</td>
<td>1667 - 1698 (65.6 - 66.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>2788 (109.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front track</td>
<td>1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear track</td>
<td>1554 - 1569 (61.2 - 61.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Capacities and Specifications

Towing equipment dimensions
## Capacities and Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Bumper – end of tow ball</td>
<td>111 (4.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment point – centre of tow ball (C-MAX)</td>
<td>4 (0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment point – centre of tow ball (Grand C-MAX)</td>
<td>5 (0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Wheel centre – centre of tow ball</td>
<td>925 (36.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – side member</td>
<td>518 (20.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Distance between side members</td>
<td>1036 (40.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – centre 1. attachment point</td>
<td>426 (16.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – centre 2. attachment point</td>
<td>726 (28.6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPORTANT AUDIO INFORMATION

WARNINGS

⚠️ Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) and rewritable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.

⚠️ These CD radio units will play compact discs that conform to the International Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.

⚠️ Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming could occur. Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.

⚠️ All CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only.

⚠️ The audio unit may be damaged if unsuitable items like credit cards or coins are pushed inside the CD aperture.

Audio unit labels

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

Disc labels

Audio CD

MP3

CAUTION—INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS
Audio unit overview

**Note:** Units have an integrated multi function display situated above the CD aperture. This shows important information regarding control of your audio unit. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)

**Type 1**

- **A** CD eject. See **Compact disc player** (page 232).
- **B** Navigation arrows.
- **C** CD aperture. See **Compact disc player** (page 232).
- **D** OK.
- **E** Information.
- **F** Traffic announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 228).
- **G** Station presets. See **Station preset buttons** (page 228).

---

E130324
Audio unit overview

H Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 227). See Track selection (page 232).
I On/off and volume control.
K Menu select.
L Sound button. See Sound button (page 227).
M Auxiliary select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 125). See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235).
N Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 227).
O CD select. See Compact disc player (page 232).

Type 2

09:15

87.50 MHz

1 2 3 4

A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4
Audio unit overview

A  CD eject. See Compact disc player (page 232).
B  Navigation arrows.
C  CD aperture. See Compact disc player (page 232).
D  OK.
E  Information.
F  Traffic announcement. See Traffic information control (page 228).
G  Sound button. See Sound button (page 227).
H  Telephone keypad and station presets. See Using the telephone (page 238). See Station preset buttons (page 228).
I  Function 4.
J  Function 3.
K  Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 227). See Track selection (page 232).
Audio unit overview

L  On/off and volume control.
N  Function 2.
O  Function 1.
P  Menu select.
Q  Phone menu. See Telephone (page 237).
R  Auxiliary, USB and iPod select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 125). See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235). See Connectivity (page 257).
S  Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 227).
T  CD select. See Compact disc player (page 232).

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.
A  On/off control.
B  Display select.
C  Telephone keypad and station presets. See *Using the telephone* (page 238). See *Station preset buttons* (page 228).
D  CD aperture. See *Compact disc player* (page 232).
E  Navigation arrows.
F  DSP select. See *Digital signal processing (DSP)* (page 230).
G  CD eject. See *Compact disc player* (page 232).
H  Information.
I  Clock.
J  Seek up. CD track selection. End call. See *Station tuning control* (page 227). See *Track selection* (page 232). See *Using the telephone* (page 238).
K  Mute.
Audio unit overview

L  Traffic announcement. See Traffic information control (page 228).
M  Function 4.
N  Sound button. See Sound button (page 227).
O  Function 3.
P  OK.
Q  Function 2.
R  Menu select.
S  Function 1.
T  Phone menu. See Telephone (page 237).
U  Auxiliary select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 125). See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235).
W  Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 227).
X  CD select. See Compact disc player (page 232).
Y  Volume control.

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.
SECURITY CODE

Each unit incorporates a unique code that is linked to the vehicle identification number (VIN). The system will automatically check that the audio unit and vehicle match before allowing operation.

If a security code message appears, please see your dealer.
Audio unit operation

**ON/OFF CONTROL**
Press the on/off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off.
The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

**SOUND BUTTON**
This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).
1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the OK button to confirm the new settings.

**WAVEBAND BUTTON**
Press the RADIO button to select from the wavebands available.
The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.
Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press OK.

**STATION TUNING CONTROL**

**DAB service linking**

*Note: The DAB service linking is as per default off.*

*Note: Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

**Seek tuning**
Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

**Manual tuning**

**Type 1**
1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then MANUAL TUNE.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

**Type 2 and 3**
1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

**Scan tuning**
Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

**Type 1**
1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then SCAN.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

**Type 2 and 3**
1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or OK to continue listening to a station.

**STATION PRESET BUTTONS**

This feature allows you to store your favourite stations so that they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, FM and DAB stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

**AUTOSTORE CONTROL**

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. It can also be used to store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

**Note:** On type 3 you must select either FM AST or AM AST to use this function.

- Press and hold function button 1 or the RADIO button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the Autostore presets.

**TRAFFIC INFORMATION CONTROL**

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic programme information.

**Activating traffic announcements**

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A ‘TA’ display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, ‘TP’ will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic programme.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and ‘Traffic announcement (TA)’ will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.
Audio unit operation

Note: When you are listening to a non TA station and turn TA off and on again a TP seek will occur.

Traffic announcement volume
Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

• Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Ending traffic announcements
The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

Note: If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.
**AUTOMATIC VOLUME CONTROL**

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

**DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING (DSP)**

**DSP occupancy**

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

**DSP equaliser**

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

**Changing the DSP settings**

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the MENU button to return.

**NEWS BROADCASTS**

Some audio units interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided.

During news broadcasts, the display will indicate there is an incoming announcement. News interrupts are broadcast at the same preset volume level as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

**ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCIES**

Many programmes that broadcast on the FM waveband have a programme identification (PI) code, which can be recognised by audio units.

If your radio has alternative frequencies (AF) tuning switched on and you move from one transmission area to another, this facility will search for and switch to a stronger station signal, if one can be found.

Under certain conditions, however, AF tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and, if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.
It will restore radio reception when it finds one or, if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, ‘AF’ will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO MENU.
3. Scroll to ALTERNATE FREQ. or ALTERNATIVE FREQ. and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

**REGIONAL MODE (REG)**

Regional mode (REG) controls the behaviour of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities.

When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents 'random' AF switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' AF switches if they are not.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.
COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

Note: During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that has elapsed since the start of the track.

During radio reception, press the CD button once to start CD playback.

Playback will start immediately after a disc is loaded.

TRACK SELECTION

- Press the seek up button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
- Press the seek down button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
- Press the seek down button repeatedly to select previous tracks.
- Press the up or down arrow buttons, and using the OK button, select the required track.

Type 2 and 3

The desired track number may be entered using the numeric keypad. Dial the required track number until complete (for example 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press OK.

FAST FORWARD/REVERSE

Press and hold the seek down or up buttons to search backwards or forwards within the tracks on the disc.

SHUFFLE/RANDOM

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SHUFFLE, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

Type 2 and 3

Press function button 2.

Note: When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order. Repeat presses of function button 2 will toggle these options.

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle if required.

REPEAT COMPACT DISC TRACKS

Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select REPEAT, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

The track will replay once ended.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder.

Type 2 and 3

Press function button 1.
When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 1 will toggle these options.

**COMPACT DISC TRACK SCANNING**

The SCAN function allows you to preview each track for approximately 5 seconds.

**Type 1**

Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SCAN, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder.

3. Press the OK button to stop the scan mode.

**Type 2 and 3**

1. Press function button 3.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 3 will toggle these options.

2. Press function button 3 again to stop the scan mode.

**MP3 FILE PLAYBACK**

**Note:** Some copy protected audio files may not be read by the CD player.

The CD player also supports MP3 and WMA format audio files.

When a CD containing audio is inserted into the CD player the disc's directory structure is read in. It may take a while before playback starts and is dependant on the quality of the disc.

MP3 tracks may be recorded on the CD in several ways. They can all be placed in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or they can be placed in folders that may represent, for example, an album, an artist, or a genre.

**Playing a multi session disc**

The normal playing sequence on CD's with multiple folders is to play the tracks in the first folder, then the tracks in any folders nested inside the first folder, then move onto the second folder, and so on. For example, if folder 1 has folders 1a and 1b within it, and folder 2 contains folder 2a, the playing sequence will be folder 1, 1a, 1b, 2, 2a.

When the playback of a file is finished the playback of the other files in the same directory continues. Directory change takes place automatically when all files in the current directory have been played back.

**MP3 DISPLAY OPTIONS**

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The file name
- The folder name
- ID3 information which might be the album or artist's name.

The unit will normally show the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press the INFO button repeatedly until the required item is shown in the display.
Note: If the ID3 information selected is unavailable, NO MP3 TAG will be shown in the display.

CD text display options

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The disc name
- The artist name
- The track name.

Note: These display options are selected in the same way as MP3 displays. NO DISC NAME or NO TRACK NAME will be shown in the display if no information has been encoded.

ENDING COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

To restore radio reception on all units:

- Press the RADIO button.

Note: This will not eject the CD; the disc will merely pause at the point where radio reception was restored.

To resume CD playback, press the CD button again.
Note: For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.

When fitted the Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket permits an auxiliary device, such as an MP3 player, to be linked into the vehicle audio system. Output can be played through the vehicle speakers.

To connect an auxiliary device, plug it into the AUX IN socket using a 3.5 mm conventional audio jack connector.

Select the auxiliary input via the AUX button and playback will be heard through the vehicle speakers. LINE IN or LINE IN ACTIVE will appear in the vehicle audio unit display. Volume, treble and bass can be adjusted on the vehicle audio unit as normal.

The vehicle audio unit buttons can also be used to restore playback from the vehicle audio unit, while the auxiliary device remains connected.
## Audio troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio unit display</th>
<th>Rectification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLEASE CHECK CD</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Ensure disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE MALFUNCTION</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP</td>
<td>Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE</td>
<td>General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your dealer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL INFORMATION

CAUTION

⚠️ Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

This section describes the functions and features of the Bluetooth mobile phone hands free system.

The Bluetooth mobile phone part of the system provides interaction with the audio or navigation system and your mobile phone. It allows you to use the audio or navigation system to make and receive calls without having to hold your mobile phone.

Compatibility of phones

CAUTION

⚠️ As no common agreement exists, mobile phone manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the phone and hands-free system, which in some cases may significantly degrade the system performance. To avoid this situation, only recommended phones should be used.

Please visit the website www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com for full details.

BLUETOOTH SETUP

Before you can use your telephone with your vehicle it must be bonded to the vehicle telephone system.

Handling of phones

Up to six Bluetooth devices can be bonded to the vehicle system.

Note: If there is an ongoing call when the phone in use is selected as the new active phone, the call is transferred to the vehicle audio system.

Note: Even if connected to the car system, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

Requirements for Bluetooth connection

The following are required before a Bluetooth phone connection can be made.

1. The Bluetooth feature must be activated on the phone and on the audio unit. Make sure the Bluetooth menu option in the audio unit is set to ON. For information on phone settings, refer to your phone user guide.

2. In the Bluetooth menu on your phone, search for Ford Audio and select it.

3. Enter the code number shown on the vehicle display using the phone keypad. If no code number is shown on the display, enter the Bluetooth PIN number 0000 using the phone keypad. Now enter the Bluetooth PIN number shown on the vehicle display.

4. If your mobile phone asks you to authorize the automatic connection, select YES.

Note: A phone call will be disconnected if the audio unit is switched off. If the ignition key is turned to the off position the phone call will remain in progress.

TELEPHONE SETUP

Phonebook

Note: It may be necessary to confirm phonebook access to the Bluetooth system via the mobile phone.
After start up access to the phonebook list can be delayed for several minutes, depending upon the size.

**Phonebook categories**
The category is indicated as an icon:
- Phone
- Mobile
- Home
- Office

**Making a phone an active phone**

**Note:** If there is an ongoing call when the phone in use is selected as the new active phone, the call is transferred to the vehicle audio system.

When using the system for the first time, no phone is connected to the system.

After switching on the ignition and the audio unit, the Bluetooth phone must be bonded to the system. See **Bluetooth setup** (page 237).

After bonding a Bluetooth phone to the system, this becomes the active phone. For further information refer to the phone menu.

Select the phone from the active phone menu.

Turning the ignition and radio back on again, the last active phone is picked up by the system.

**Note:** In some cases the Bluetooth connection must also be confirmed on the phone.

**Bond another Bluetooth phone**

Bond a new Bluetooth phone as described in the requirements for a Bluetooth connection.

Phones stored in the system are accessible by using the phone list on the audio unit.

**Note:** A maximum of six devices may be bonded. If six Bluetooth devices have already been bonded, one of these has to be debonded in order to bond a new device.

**TELEPHONE CONTROLS**

**Remote control**

A. Volume up
B. Voice button
C. End call
D. Volume down
E. Receive call

**USING THE TELEPHONE**

**Note:** Refer to your audio guide for details of the controls. See **Audio unit overview** (page 220).
Note: You can exit the phone menu by pressing any source button CD, RADIO or AUX.

Note: When referred to, the use of the up/down arrow buttons, seek up and seek down buttons, and the OK button can be used on either the steering wheel or the audio unit.

This chapter describes the phone functions of the audio unit.

An active phone must be present.

Even if connected to the audio unit, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

Making a call

Dialling a number using voice control

Phone numbers can be dialled using voice control. See Telephone commands (page 249).

Dialling a number using the address book

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until PHONEBOOK is shown.
3. Press the OK button.

Note: You can also use the telephone keypad to select the first letter of the entry you are looking for. Press the relevant number that corresponds to the letter repeatedly until the required letter is displayed.

4. Press the up/down arrow buttons to select the desired phone number.

Note: Press and hold the up/down arrow buttons to search forwards or backwards within the phonebook.

5. Press the OK button to dial the selected phone number.

Dialling a number using the telephone keypad

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Dial the number using the telephone keypad on the audio unit.
3. Press the OK button.

Note: If you enter an incorrect digit whilst entering a phone number, press function button 3 to erase the last digit. A long press will erase the complete string of digits.

Ending a call

Calls can be ended by:
• pressing the seek up button
• pressing the OK button
• pressing function button 4.

Redialling a number

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until CALL LISTS is displayed.
3. Press the OK button.

Note: If the active phone does not provide a call out list, the last outgoing call number/entry can be redialed.

4. Press the up/down buttons to select the desired call list.
5. Press the OK button.
6. Press the up/down buttons to select the desired phone number.
7. Press the OK button.

Redialling the last dialled number

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until REDIAL is displayed.
3. Press the OK button.
Telephone

Receiving an incoming call

Accepting an incoming call
Incoming calls can be accepted by pressing the seek down button, or by pressing the OK button.

Rejecting an incoming call
Incoming calls can be rejected by:
• pressing the seek up button, or
• pressing the arrow down button to highlight REJECT and then pressing the OK button.

Receiving a second incoming call
Note: The second incoming call function must be activated in your phone.
If there is an incoming call whilst there is an ongoing call, a beep will be heard and you will have the option to end the active call and to accept the incoming call.

Accepting a second incoming call
Note: The first incoming call will be disconnected and replaced by the second incoming call.
Second incoming calls can be accepted by pressing the seek down button on the steering wheel or on the audio unit, or by pressing the OK button on the audio unit.

Rejecting a second incoming call
Second incoming calls can be rejected by:
• pressing the seek up button, or
• pressing the arrow down button to highlight REJECT and then pressing the OK button.
Second incoming calls can be rejected by pressing function button 4.

Muting the microphone
Note: During a call, it is possible to mute the microphone. Whilst muted, confirmation will appear in the display.
Press function button 1. Press the button once again to turn this function off.

Changing the active phone
Note: Phones must be bonded to the system before they can be made active.
Note: After bonding a phone to the system, this becomes the active phone.
1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the up/down buttons until SELECT PHONE is shown.
3. Press the OK button.
4. Scroll through the different stored phones by using the up/down buttons to display the bonded phones.
5. Press the OK button to select the phone which is to be the active phone.

Debonding a bonded phone
A bonded phone can be deleted from the system at any time, unless a phone call is in progress.
1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the up/down buttons until SELECT PHONE is shown.
3. Press the OK button.
4. Press the up/down buttons to highlight the required phone.
5. Press function button 1.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

CAUTION

Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

Voice recognition enables operation of the system without the need to divert your attention from the road ahead in order to change settings, or receive feedback from the system.

Whenever you issue one of the defined commands with the system active, the voice recognition system converts your command into a control signal for the system. Your inputs take the form of dialogues or commands. You are guided through these dialogues by announcements or questions.

Please familiarise yourself with the functions of the system before using voice recognition.

Supported commands

The voice control system allows you to control the following vehicle functions:

- Bluetooth phone
- radio
- CD Player
- external device (USB)
- external device (iPod)
- automatic climate control

System response

As you work through a voice session the system will prompt you with a beep tone each time the system is ready to proceed.

Do not try to give any commands until the beep tone has been heard. The voice control system will repeat each spoken command back to you.

If you are not sure how to continue say "HELP" for assistance or "CANCEL" if you do not wish to continue.

The "HELP" function provides only a subset of the available voice commands. Detailed explanations of all possible voice commands can be found on the following pages.

Voice commands

All voice commands should be given using a natural speaking voice, as if speaking to a passenger or on the phone. Your voice level should be dependant on the surrounding noise level inside or outside the vehicle but do not shout.

USING VOICE CONTROL

System operation

The order and content of the voice controls are given in the following lists. The tables show the sequence of user voice commands and system responses for each available function.

<> indicates a number or stored name tag to be inserted by the user.

Short cuts

There are a number of voice command short cuts available, which allow you to control some vehicle features without having to follow the complete command menu. These are:

- phone: "MOBILE NAME", "DIAL NUMBER", "DIAL NAME", and "REDIAL"
- automatic climate control: "TEMPERATURE", "AUTO MODE", "DEFROSTING/DEMISTING ON" and "DEFROSTING/DEMISTING OFF"
- radio: "TUNE NAME"
- external device (USB): "TRACK"
- external device (iPod): "TRACK"
Start communicating with the system
Before you can start talking to the system you first have to press the VOICE button for each operation and wait until the system answers with a beep. See Voice Control (page 51).
Press the button again to cancel the voice session.

Name tag
The name tag functionality can support the phone, audio and navigation features by using the "STORE NAME" function. You can assign name tags to items such as favourite radio stations and personal phone contacts. See Audio unit commands (page 242). See Telephone commands (page 249).

- Store up to 20 name tags per function.
- The average recording time for each name tag is approximately 2-3 seconds.

** AUDIO UNIT COMMANDS **

** CD Player **
You can control playback directly by voice control.

** Overview **
The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;CD PLAYER&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;HELP&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE ALL&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE FOLDER&quot;**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE OFF&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT FOLDER&quot;**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT TRACK&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT OFF&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
** Only available if the CD contains audio data files like MP3.

** Track **
You can choose a track on your CD directly.
Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CD PLAYER&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CD PLAYER&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;:&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;**</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
** Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

**Shuffle all**
To set random playback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CD PLAYER&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CD PLAYER&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE ALL&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Radio**
The radio voice commands support the functionality of the radio and allow you to tune radio stations by voice control.

**Overview**
The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu.

"RADIO"
"HELP"
"AM"
"FM"
"TUNE NAME"*
"DELETE NAME"
"DELETE DIRECTORY"
"PLAY DIRECTORY"
"STORE NAME"
Voice control

"RADIO"

"PLAY"

* Can be used as a shortcut.

Tune frequency

This function allows you to tune your radio by voice commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;AM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;AM FREQUENCY PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;FM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;FM FREQUENCY PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;frequency&gt;&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;TUNE &lt;frequency&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The frequency may be entered in a variety of ways. Refer below for representative examples.

FM band: 87.5 - 108.0 in increments of 0.1
- "Eighty nine point nine" (89.9)
- "Ninety" (90.0)
- "One hundred point five" (100.5)
- "One zero one point one" (101.1)
- "One zero eight" (108.0)

AM/MW band: 531 - 1602 in increments of 9
- "Five thirty one" (531)
- "Nine hundred" (900)
- "Fourteen forty" (1440)
- "Fifteen zero three" (1503)
- "Ten eighty" (1080)

AM/LW band: 153 - 281 in increments of 1
- "Five hundred one" (150)
- "Nine hundred" (900)
- "One thousand forty" (1400)
- "Fifteen zero three" (1503)
- "Ten eighty" (1080)

Store name

If you have tuned a radio station, you can store it with a name in the directory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;REPEAT NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORING NAME&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt; STORED&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Voice control

Tune name
This function allows you to call up a stored radio station.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TUNE NAME&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TUNE &lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

Delete name
This function allows you to delete a stored radio station.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE &lt;name&gt;&quot; &quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETED&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Play directory
This function allows you to let the system tell you all of the stored radio stations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY &lt;DIRECTORY&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Delete directory
This function allows you to delete all stored radio stations at once.
Voice control

### Play
This function switches the audio source to the radio mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Auxiliary input
This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached auxiliary input device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;LINE IN&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LINE IN&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### External devices - USB
These voice commands support the functionality of an external USB device which may be connected to the audio unit.

### Overview
The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;, &quot;USB&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;HELP&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Voice control

"EXTERNAL DEVICE", "USB"

"PLAY"

"TRACK"*

"PLAYLIST"**

"FOLDER"**

"SHUFFLE ALL"

"SHUFFLE FOLDER"

"SHUFFLE PLAYLIST"

"SHUFFLE OFF"

"REPEAT TRACK"

"REPEAT FOLDER"

"REPEAT OFF"

* Can be used as a shortcut.

** Playlists and folders activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See General Information (page 257).

USB play

This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached USB device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

USB Track

You can choose a track on your USB device directly.
Voice control

### External devices - iPod

These voice commands support the functionality of an iPod which may be connected to the audio unit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

- **"EXTERNAL DEVICE", "IPOD"**
  - "HELP"
  - "PLAY"
  - "TRACK"*
  - "PLAYLIST"**
  - "SHUFFLE ALL"
  - "SHUFFLE PLAYLIST"
  - "SHUFFLE OFF"
  - "REPEAT TRACK"
  - "REPEAT OFF"

* Can be used as a shortcut.

** Playlists activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See General Information (page 257).
Voice control

iPod Track

You can choose a track off the all titles list of your iPod directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;**</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
** Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to five single digits (for example "5", "2", "4", "5", "3" for track 52453), to a limit of 65535.

iPod playlist

You can choose a playlist from your iPod directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;EXTERNAL DEVICE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 10&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Playlists activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames. See General Information (page 257).

TELEPHONE COMMANDS

Phone

Your phone system allows you to create an additional phonebook. The stored entries can be dialled by voice control. Phone numbers stored by using voice control are stored on the vehicle system and not in your phone.

Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.
Voice control

| "PHONE" | "HELP" |
| "MOBILE NAME"* |
| "DIAL NUMBER"* |
| "DIAL NAME"* |
| "DELETE NAME" |
| "DELETE DIRECTORY" |
| "PLAY DIRECTORY" |
| "STORE NAME" |
| "REDIAL"* |
| "ACCEPT CALLS" |
| "REJECT CALLS" |

* Can be used as a shortcut.

Phone functions

Dial number

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL NUMBER&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt; CONTINUE?&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CORRECTION&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;repeat last part of number&gt; CONTINUE?&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
## Voice control

### Dial name

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL NAME&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL &lt;name&gt;&quot; &quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

### Redial

This function allows you to redial the last dialled phone number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;REDIAL&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;REDIAL&quot; &quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

### Mobile name

This function allows you to access phone numbers stored with a name tag in your mobile phone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;MOBILE NAME&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;MOBILE NAME&quot; &quot;&lt;phone dependent dialogue&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
Voice control

DTMF (Tone dialling)
This function transfers spoken numbers into DTMF tones. For example, to make a remote enquiry to your home answering machine or to enter a PIN number etc.

**Note:** DTMF can only be used during an ongoing call. Operate the VOICE button and wait for the system prompt.
Can only be used with vehicles installed with a dedicated VOICE button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;numbers 1 to 9, zero, hash, star&gt;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create a phonebook

Store name
New entries can be stored with the "STORE NAME" command. This feature can be used to dial a number by calling up the name instead of the full phone number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot; &quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;REPEAT NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORING NAME&quot; &quot;&lt;name&gt; STORED&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>&quot;STORE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORING NUMBER&quot; &quot;&lt;phone number&gt; STORED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Delete name
Stored names can also be deleted from the directory.
Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE &lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt; DELETED&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Play directory

Use this function to let the system tell you all stored entries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Delete directory

This function allows you to delete all entries in one go.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIRECTORY DELETED&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Main settings

#### Reject calls

Calls can be set to be automatically rejected using voice control.
Voice control

**Climate Control Commands**

**Climate**

The climate voice commands support the functionality of the fan speed, temperature and mode settings. Not all functions are available on all vehicles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;REJECT CALLS&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;REJECT CALLS&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;ACCEPT CALLS&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;ACCEPT CALLS&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* use this command to turn the reject mode off

**Overview**

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;HELP&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FAN&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING/DEMISTING ON&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING/DEMISTING OFF&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut. On vehicles fitted with an English language module the "FAN" shortcut is not available.

**Fan**

This function allows you to adjust the fan speed.
Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;FAN&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;FAN SPEED PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;MINIMUM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;FAN MINIMUM&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 7&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;FAN &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;MAXIMUM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;FAN MAXIMUM&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut. On vehicles fitted with an English language module the "FAN" shortcut is not available.

Defrosting/Demisting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

Temperature

This function allows you to adjust the temperature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;MINIMUM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE MINIMUM&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 15 and 29 °C with 0.5 increments&gt;&quot; or &quot;&lt;a number between 59 and 84 °F&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Voice control**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;MAXIMUM&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE MAXIMUM&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

**Auto mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut. Can be deactivated by selecting a different temperature or fan speed.
GENERAL INFORMATION

CAUTIONS

⚠ Take care when handling external devices with exposed electrical connectors (such as the USB plug). Always replace the protective cap/shield when possible. There may be a risk of electrostatic discharge causing damage to the device.

⚠ Do not touch or handle the USB socket in the vehicle. Cover the socket when not in use.

⚠ Only use USB Mass-Storage device compliant devices.

⚠ Always switch your audio unit to a different source (for example the radio) before unplugging the USB device.

⚠ Do not install or connect USB hubs or splitters.

Note: The system is only designed to recognize and read suitable audio files from a USB device that conforms to the USB Mass-Storage device class or an iPod. Not all available USB devices can be guaranteed to function with the system.

Note: It is possible to connect compatible devices with a trailing USB lead as well as those that plug into the vehicle USB socket directly (for example USB memory sticks and pen drives).

Note: Some USB devices with a higher power consumption may not be compatible (for example some larger hard drives).

Note: Access time to read the files on the external device will vary depending upon factors such as the file structure, size and device content.

The system supports a range of external devices, to fully integrate with your audio unit via the USB and auxiliary input sockets. Once connected, control of the external device is possible via the audio unit.

A list of typical compatible devices are shown below:

• USB memory sticks
• USB portable hard drives
• Some MP3 players with USB connection
• iPod media players (refer to www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com for latest compatibility list).

The system is USB 2.0 full speed compatible, USB 1.1 host compliant and supports FAT 16/32 file systems.

Information on audio file structures for external devices

USB

Create only a single partition on the USB device.

If playlists are created, they must contain correct file paths referenced to the USB device. It is recommended to create the playlist after the audio files have been transferred to the USB device.

Playlists must be created in .m3u format.

Audio files must be in .mp3 format.

Do not exceed the following limits:

• 1000 items per folder (files, folders and playlists)
• 5000 folders per USB device (including playlists)
• 8 subfolder levels.
To enable voice control for custom playlists and folders, follow the procedure below:

- Create folders named with the structure "Ford <*>" where <*> is a number 1-10. For example "Ford3" without an extension.
- Create playlists named with the structure "Ford <*>.m3u" where <*> is a number 1-10. For example "Ford5.m3u" without any space between "Ford" and the number.

Thereafter, custom folders and playlists will be selectable with voice control. See Audio unit commands (page 242).

**iPod**

To enable voice control for custom playlists, create playlists named with the structure "Ford <*>" where <*> is a number 1-10. For example "Ford7" without any space between "Ford" and the number.

Thereafter, playlists will be selectable with voice control. See Audio unit commands (page 242).

**CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE**

**WARNING**

Make sure the external device is securely mounted within the vehicle, and that trailing connections do not obstruct any of the driving controls.

External devices may be connected using the auxiliary input socket and the USB port. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 125). See USB port (page 125).

**Connection**

Plug in the device, and if necessary secure it to prevent movement within the vehicle.

**Connecting an iPod**

For optimum convenience and audio quality, we recommend that you purchase a dedicated single connection lead available from your dealer.

Alternatively, it is possible to connect your iPod using the standard iPod USB cable and a separate 3.5mm audio jack lead. If using this method preset the iPod volume to maximum and turn off any equalizer settings before making the connections:

- Connect the headphone output of the iPod to the AUX IN socket.
- Connect the USB cable from the iPod to the vehicle USB socket.

**CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: BLUETOOTH**

**Connecting a Bluetooth audio device**

**CAUTION**

As various standards exist, manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the Bluetooth device and the system, which in some cases may limit system functionality. To avoid this situation, only recommended devices should be used.

Please visit the website www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com for full details.
Bonding the device

To connect the device to the system follow the same procedure as for Bluetooth hands free phones. See Bluetooth setup (page 237).

Operating the device

Note: The seek buttons and file information will only work on certain phones and devices.

Select Bluetooth audio as the active source.

1. Select AUX.
2. Press the up and down arrow buttons to select the desired function.
3. Press the OK button.

Tracks can be accessed by skipping forwards and backwards using the steering wheel controls, or directly from the audio unit controls.

Audio control

Press the seek up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.
Press and hold the seek keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.
Press the INFO button or function button 4 to display the following:
- Title.
- Artist.
- Album.
- File name.

Operation

Select the USB device as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the AUX button until the USB screen appears in the display. After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

USING A USB DEVICE

Various icons are used to identify types of audio file, folders etc.

USB device is the active source
Connectivity

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the folder hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist or folder is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.

**Note:** If you wish to jump to the top level of the USB device contents, press and hold the left arrow key.

**Audio control**

Press the seek up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.
Press and hold the seek keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.
Use the function buttons to enable shuffle, repeat and scan with respect to the whole device, folders and playlists.
Press the INFO button or function button 4 to display the following:
- title
- artist
- album
- folder name
- file name.

**USING AN IPOD**

Various icons are used to identify types of audio file, folders etc.

- iPod is the active source
- iPod playlist
- iPod artist
- iPod album
- iPod genre
- iPod song
- iPod generic category
- iPod generic media file

**Operation**

Connect the iPod. See **Connecting an external device** (page 258).

Select the iPod as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the AUX button until the iPod screen appears in the display.
The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the radio display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

• A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
• ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
• "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
• An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist, album, artist or genre is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.

**Note:** If you wish to jump to the top level of the iPod contents, press and hold the left arrow key.

**Audio control**

Press the seek up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.
Press and hold the seek keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.
Use the function buttons to enable shuffle and repeat with respect to playlists.
Press function button 3 to scan the whole device or a playlist if it is in operation.

Press the **INFO** button or function button 4 to display the following:

• title
• artist
• album.
GENERAL INFORMATION

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

One hour mode

To conserve battery power, the system can be operated in one hour mode. If the ignition is off, press the ON/OFF button to switch the system on. The system will automatically switch off after one hour.

System notes

WARNINGS

The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

The unit is a high grade laser product which uses an invisible laser beam. If this is handled incorrectly it can emit dangerous rays. Do not attempt to look through any openings in the unit.

CAUTIONS

Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.

Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.

Do not insert foreign objects into any of the unit disc drives or media card slots.

Do not insert more than one disc into the unit disc drive.

CAUTIONS

Use only 12 cm (4.7 inches) discs or 8 cm (3.1 inches) discs with a suitable adaptor.

Do not attempt to open the unit. If the unit malfunctions consult your dealer.

Improper use of settings and connections, other than those explained in this handbook, can damage the unit.

Do not turn the ignition key or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.

The system is recommended for use when the ignition key is turned to the accessory position or when the engine is running. If the system is used extensively when the engine is not running, care needs to be taken to avoid draining the battery.

ROAD SAFETY

WARNINGS

The system provides you with information designed to help you reach your destination quickly and safely.

For reasons of safety, the driver should only program the system when the vehicle is stationary.

The system provides no assistance with respect to stop signs, traffic lights, areas under construction or other important safety information.

Do not use the system until you have familiarised yourself with its operation.

Only view the system display when driving conditions permit.
Safety information

Read and follow all stated safety precautions. Failure to do so may increase your risk of collision and personal injury. Ford Motor Company shall not be liable for any damages of any type arising from failure to follow these guidelines.

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

Do not use the navigation system to locate emergency services.

To use the system as effectively and safely as possible, always use the latest navigation information. Your dealer will be able to assist with this.
Vehicles with mobile navigation system

CAUTION
Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

Note: You will be charged when sending and receiving text messages.

Note: Refer to your phone handbook for all phone functions and operation.

Note: Keep the activation code (printed on the installation guide) in a safe place.

Note: Retain the activation text message in your mobile phone inbox.

Compatibility of phones

CAUTION
As no common agreement exists, mobile phone manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the phone and hands-free system, which in some cases may significantly degrade the system performance. To avoid this situation, only recommended phones should be used.

Please visit the website www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com for full details.

Installing the micro SD card

1. Remove the micro SD card from the adaptor.
2. Insert the micro SD card into the mobile phone.

Activating the mobile phone navigation system

Note: The radio must be switched on before connecting the mobile phone to the in-car GPS receiver.

Note: The Ford Mobile Navigation must be installed and activated on your mobile phone.

Note: It is possible to activate up to a maximum of three phones.

Note: Detailed instructions are available on the micro SD card and at www.ford-mobile-connectivity.com.

To connect the device to the system follow the same procedure as for Bluetooth hands free phones. See Bluetooth setup (page 237).

1. Switch the radio on.
2. Switch your mobile phone on and start the "Ford Mobile Navigation".
3. Choose "Select Destination".
4. Choose "Enter Address".
5. Change route options if necessary and start the route guidance.
6. The vehicle display will show the turn information. Voice instructions are heard via the vehicle speakers.

**Note:** Your mobile phone will display your current position.

7. You are able to exit the application and continue your route guidance after restarting the application.

**Vehicles with CD-SD navigation system or Sony CD-SD navigation system**

The system has a large range of features, yet is easy and intuitive to use. Route guidance is shown on the display screen. The screen provides full information for operating the system through the use of menus, text screens and map displays. Screen selections are made by scrolling through the menus using the up, down, left and right arrow buttons and pressing the **OK** button to activate the desired setting.

**Basic operation**

1. Press either the **NAV** or **MENU** button to enter the menu structure.
2. Use the up, down, left and right arrow buttons and scroll through the various selection lists.
3. Press the **OK** button to activate your selection.

**Selection lists**

Various screens are presented which offer a selection list of available options.

1. Select the option you require, or if it is not shown on the screen use the up and down arrow buttons to view the remainder of the selection list.
2. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.

**Alphanumeric keypad entry**

When it is necessary to enter an address, a keypad will appear prompting you to enter a postcode, city, or street.

1. Use the up, down, left and right arrow buttons to select the letter or number that you require.

**Note:** As you spell the entry the results will appear in the display.

**Note:** The system will limit your entries to only those characters which spell a valid entry.

2. Press the **OK** button to activate your selection.

**Route setting example**

**Navigation main screen**

- To select the navigation system, press the **NAV** button. The road safety caution will be displayed. To use the system, read the caution and press the **OK** button.

**Destination input screen**

- Use the up and down arrow buttons and scroll to **Destination input**.
- Press the **OK** button to activate your selection.

**Note:** A list with several options is shown.
Starting from the top, select the country followed by either the postcode if available or city and street name.

- Use the alphanumerical keypad and selection lists to select your address details.

- Once sufficient information has been entered, scroll to **Start guidance** and press the **OK** button to activate your selection.

**Note:** *If you only need to navigate to a city centre for example, full address details are not required.*

- The route is now calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen with instructions on how to proceed.

- Follow the screen information and voice prompts to reach your destination.
Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.
A  CD eject.
B  Navigation arrows.
C  CD aperture.
D  OK.
E  Information.
F  Map select. See **Route displays** (page 276).
G  Menu select. See **System settings** (page 272).
H  Telephone keypad and station presets. See **Audio unit operation** (page 227).
     See **Audio unit menus** (page 230). See **Telephone** (page 237).
I  Clock. See **System settings** (page 272).
J  Traffic announcement. See **Traffic Message Channel** (page 277).
K  Function 4.
Navigation unit overview

L Function 3.
M Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 227). See Track selection (page 232).
N On/off and volume control. See On/off control (page 227).
O Seek down. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 227). See Track selection (page 232).
P Function 2.
Q Function 1.
R Phone select. See Telephone (page 237).
S Auxiliary select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235).
T Radio select. See Audio unit operation (page 227). See Audio unit menus (page 230).
U CD select. See Compact disc player (page 232).
A  On/off control. See On/off control (page 227).
D  CD aperture.
E  Navigation arrows.
F  Map select. See Route displays (page 276).
G  CD eject.
H  Information.
I  Clock. See System settings (page 272).
Navigation unit overview

K  Home select. See System settings (page 272).
M  Function 4.
N  Sound select. See Sound button (page 227).
O  Function 3.
P  OK.
Q  Function 2.
R  Menu select. See System settings (page 272).
S  Function 1.
T  Phone select. See Telephone (page 237).
U  Auxiliary select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 235).
W  Radio select. See Audio unit operation (page 227). See Audio unit menus (page 230).
X  CD select. See Compact disc player (page 232).
Y  Volume control.

LOADING THE NAVIGATION DATA

Loading the navigation data

1. Load the navigation SD card into the aperture.
2. Press the NAV button. The road safety warning will be shown in the display.
3. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required feature.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.

For map updates and system upgrades please refer to your dealer.
Most of the important settings for your navigation unit can be accessed via the MENU or NAV button. The following section describes the various options and how to use them.

For menu structures: See Information Displays (page 83).

**Menu structure - Information and entertainment display - Vehicles with navigation system**

**Route**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example continue route guidance, block specific sections of your route or select specific sections of a route).

**Destination input**
This feature allows you to enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).

**Traffic**
This feature allows you to customise how you receive traffic information (for example review and sort traffic messages, review your route or block parts of your route).

**Home address**
This feature allows you to start the route guidance to your home address or change the details of your home address.

**Note:** On Vehicles with a Sony CD-SD navigation system, press the HOME button and the system will automatically start route guidance to the listed home address.

**Last destinations**
This feature allows quick access to a history of previous destinations entered in the system. A detailed display will show the complete stored information including an overview map. Select the required repeat destination from the list.

**Favourites**
This feature allows you to customize a personal destination address book and assign user defined names to addresses and locations. A detailed display will show the complete stored information including an overview map. Select the required repeat destination from the list.

**Points of interest**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example select a museum on route or a specific point of interest near your destination).

**Tour planning**
This feature allows you to enter a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.

**Store position**
This feature allows you to store and name your current position.

**Route options**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example select the fastest or most economical route or select a route that will avoid tunnels, seasonal roads and toll roads).
System settings

Special functions
This feature allows you to select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality.

Map display
This feature allows you to change the way the map screen is displayed (for example clean 2D and clean 3D view) and to customise display information for your journey (for example time to arrival and lane guidance).

Assistance options
This feature allows you to customise display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits).

Personal data
This feature allows you to edit and delete personal data (for example your home address).

Reset all settings
This feature allows you to reset the navigation settings.

Menu structure - Information and entertainment display - All vehicles

Audio settings

Adaptive volume
This feature allows you to adjust the volume level to compensate for engine and road speed noise. You can turn this on and off.

Sound
This feature allows you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).

Nav audio mixing
This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the navigation voice output and audio source.

DSP settings
This feature allows you to customise speaker output relevant to seat positions.

DSP equaliser
This feature allows you to select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

News
This feature allows you to receive news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided. You can turn this on and off.

Alternative frequencies
This feature will search for and switch to the strongest station signal when moving from one transmission area to another.

RDS regional
This feature controls the behaviour of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster.

DAB service link
This feature allows you to select stations that are broadcast on the DAB channels.

Bluetooth
This feature allows you to switch Bluetooth on or off.
Clock settings

Set time
This feature allows you to manually adjust the time.

Set date
This feature allows you to manually adjust the date, month and year.

GPS time
This feature allows you to, if in a suitable coverage area, automatically adjust the date and time using GPS.

Set time zone
This feature allows you select a specific time zone.

Summertime
This feature allows you set the system to adjust for seasonal time differences.

Note: GPS time must be selected.

24-hour mode
This feature allows you to adjust the system between 12 and 24-hour mode.
ROUTE OPTIONS MENU

You can set a number of options which alter the way a route is planned.

Using the up, down, left and right arrow buttons, you can select from the list which road features are to be avoided or included in the route by turning the feature on or off.

**Route**

**Eco**
This option will prioritise the most economical route to the destination.

**Fast**
This option will prioritise the fastest route to the destination.

**Short**
This option will prioritise the shortest route to the destination.

**Always ask**
Use this feature to make sure that you are always given the choice of route type selection for your journey.

**Driver**

**Leisurely**
This option will prioritise the route for a leisurely driver to the destination.

**Normal**
This option will prioritise the route for a normal driver to the destination.

**Fast**
This option will prioritise the route for a fast driver to the destination.

---

**Eco settings**

**Trailer**
Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.

**Roof box**
Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.

**Dynamic**
When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel (TMC) signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion.

*Note:* This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

**Motorway**
When switched on the system will look for motorways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

*Note:* This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

**Ferry/motorail**
When switched on the system will look for ferry crossings and motorail facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

**Toll**
When switched on the system will look for toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
Seasonal roads
When switched on the system will look for seasonal roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

Note: This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

Toll sticker
When switched on the system will automatically select toll roads and update your route distance and timings.

ROUTE DISPLAYS

Map display
Press the MAP button for a map view. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the centre shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press the relevant function buttons to change the map scale and using the left and right arrow buttons zoom in or out. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 50 metres to 500 kilometres or 0.05 miles to 500 miles, with an auto setting to the far left. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to the road type being driven.

Junction zoom
This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex manoeuvres. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level.

Select AUTO to activate junction zoom.

Navigation display
After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen:

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available via the main navigation screen if required.

WARNING
Do not rely on the screen prompts when navigating. Always listen to the navigation voice and take care not be distracted from the road ahead.
Traffic Message Channel

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

Traffic message channel (TMC) stations are broadcast on the FM waveband. TMC is a feature that receives traffic alerts which can be used to plan alternative routes and avoid hold ups.

**USING TMC**

Press the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button to show the traffic menu page.

**Traffic announcement**

Traffic announcement (TA) can be turned on or off via this menu. If switched on a **TA** indicator is shown in the information border of the status bar.

Stations which broadcast on the FM waveband and carry traffic programme (TP) information are identified by **TP** shown in the screen display. With TA switched on the unit will respond to these announcements and interrupt music playback. After the announcement has ended music playback will resume.

**Ending traffic announcements**

The unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press the **TA, TRAFFIC, RADIO** or **CD** button during the announcement.

**Using TMC messages**

Select the required item to display a list of TMC messages. See **General Information** (page 83). This is only an overview display which gives very basic information. Select the message you require further information on and another screen will be displayed giving full message details on incident location etc.

You may either select a view which shows messages only affecting your programmed route, or a view which shows all messages received. Press function button 1 to change the view.
Map updates

The road network is constantly changing due to new roads, changes in road classification, etc. Therefore, it is not always possible to exactly match the map data in the system to the current road network.

Map information is regularly updated, but all areas are not necessarily covered to the same level of detail. Some roads, in particular private roads, may not be included on the database. To help with accuracy, always use the latest version navigation disc. Your dealer will be able to provide this.
TYPE APPROVALS

FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: WJLRX-42
IC: 7847A-RX42

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

RX-42 - declaration of conformity

We, the party responsible for compliance, declare under our sole responsibility that the Handset Integration product RX-42 is in conformity with the provisions of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC. A copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be found at:

www.novero.com/declaration_of_conformity

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

TYPE APPROVALS

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.
**EU Declaration**

Hereby, Valeo declares that this short range device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

---

**Appendices**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>“© EuroGeographics”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>“source: Géoroute® IGN France &amp; BD Carto® IGN France”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td>“Based upon Crown Copyright material.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR</td>
<td>“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT</td>
<td>“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie“</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SD Logo is a trademark.
Certificate for United Arab Emirates

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

WARNINGS

The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 centimetres (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Band MHz</th>
<th>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</th>
<th>Antenna Positions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 – 30</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 – 54</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 – 87.5</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142 – 176</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380 – 512</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>806 – 940</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200 – 1400</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1710 – 1885</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1885 – 2025</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:
- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.
Index

Auto-Dimming Mirror ...........................................74
Autolamps ..........................................................58
Automatic Climate Control .............................103
Air distribution ..................................................104
Blower ..............................................................104
Mono mode .........................................................104
Recirculated air ..................................................105
Setting the temperature .....................................104
Switching off the automatic climate control .........105
Switching the air conditioning on and off .................105
To switch mono mode back on .............................104
To switch mono mode off ...................................104
Windscreen defrosting and demisting ....................105
Automatic Transmission .....................................141
Emergency park position release lever ..................143
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission ......143
Manual shifting - Vehicles with a 5 speed transmission 142
Selector lever positions .......................................142
Sport mode and manual shifting - Vehicles with a 6 speed transmission 142
Automatic volume control .................................230
Autostore control ..............................................228
Autowipers ..........................................................52
Auxiliary Heater ..................................................106
Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country) .........108
Fuel operated heater (depending on country) ..........108
Parking heater ......................................................106
Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket ..........................125
Auxiliary Power Points .......................................123
Power inverter .....................................................123

B

Battery connection points ..................................198
Blind Spot Monitor .............................................74
Blind spot information system (BLIS) .......................74
Detection errors ..................................................76
System detection and alerts .................................75
Turning the system on and off ..............................75
Using the system .................................................74

Bluetooth setup ..................................................237
Handling of phones .............................................237
Requirements for Bluetooth connection .................237
Bonnet Lock
  See: Opening and Closing the Bonnet ..............185
Booster cables
  See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle ....................197
Booster Seats ....................................................20
  Booster cushion (Group 3) .................................21
  Booster seat (Group 2) .....................................20
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check ..............................191
Brakes ..............................................................144
  Principle of Operation .......................................144
Bulb changing
  See: Changing a Bulb ........................................62
  Bulb Specification Chart ...................................69

C

Capacities and Specifications ..............................216
  Technical Specifications ..................................216
Cargo Nets .......................................................163
  C-MAX .............................................................163
  Grand C-MAX ...................................................164
Luggage retention net .........................................164
Car Wash
  See: Cleaning the Exterior ................................195
Catalytic Converter ............................................136
Driving with a catalytic converter .........................136
Changing a Bulb ..................................................62
  Approach lamp .................................................65
  Central high mounted brake lamp .......................68
  Front fog lamps ................................................66
  Headlamp ..........................................................63
  Interior lamps ....................................................69
  Luggage compartment lamp, footwell lamp and tailgate lamp ..............................69
  Number plate lamp ............................................69
  Rear lamps .......................................................66
  Side lamp ..........................................................64
  Side repeater ......................................................65
Changing a Fuse ...............................................174
Index

Changing a Road Wheel............................199
   Assembling the wheel brace.................201
   Installing a road wheel......................203
   Jacking and lifting points.................200
   Locking wheel nuts..........................199
   Removing a road wheel......................202
   Removing the wheel trim....................202
   Vehicle jack........................................199
   Vehicles with a spare wheel..............199
Changing the remote control battery...........36
   Remote control with a folding key blade..................................................36
   Remote control without a folding key blade..................................................37
Changing the Vehicle Battery...............198
Changing the Wiper Blades....................54
   Rear window wiper blade....................55
   Windscreen wiper blades.................54
Checking the Wiper Blades....................54
Childminder Mirror............................125
Child Safety........................................19
Child Safety Locks............................25
Child Seat Positioning.......................21
Child Seats..........................................19
   Child restraints for different mass groups..............................................19
Cigar Lighter.................................122
Cleaning the Exterior............................195
   Body paintwork preservation..............195
   Cleaning the chrome trim.................195
   Cleaning the headlamps.....................195
   Cleaning the rear window...................195
   Cleaning the Interior......................195
   Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens......................196
   Rear windows..................................196
   Seat belts.......................................195
Climate Control..................................100
   Principle of Operation........................100
Climate control commands....................254
   Climate........................................254
   Clock...........................................122
   Coded keys.....................................47
   Cold Weather Precautions.................172
   Compact disc playback.....................232
   Compact disc player..........................232
Compact disc track scanning..................233
   Type 1............................................233
   Type 2 and 3.................................233
Connecting an external device..............258
   Connection........................................258
   Connecting an external device - Vehicles
     With: Bluetooth.............................258
   Connecting a Bluetooth audio device........258
   Connectivity.....................................257
   General Information..........................257
   Convenience features......................121
Coolant Check
   See: Engine Coolant Check.................191
Cornering Lamps...............................60
Cruise Control..................................158
   Principle of Operation........................158
Cruise control
   See: Using Cruise Control.................158
Cup Holders.......................................123
   Seat back trays..............................124

D

Diesel Particulate Filter.......................130
   Regeneration.....................................131
Digital signal processing (DSP)...........230
   Changing the DSP settings.................230
   DSP equaliser..................................230
   DSP occupancy..................................230
Direction Indicators.........................60
Disabling the passenger airbag............34
   Disabling the passenger airbag............34
   Enabling the passenger airbag.............35
   Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch.................................34
Disarming the alarm..........................49
   Vehicles with keyless entry.................49
   Vehicles without keyless entry............49
Disarming the engine immobiliser........47
DPF
   See: Diesel Particulate Filter.............130
Driving Hints.....................................172
Driving Through Water.......................172
   Driving through water.......................172

285
Index

E
Eco Mode.........................................................135
Principle of Operation.......................................135
Electric exterior mirrors................................73
Electric folding mirrors....................................73
Mirror tilting positions......................................73
Electromagnetic compatibility................281
Emergency Exit..............................................173
Ending compact disc playback..................234
Engine Block Heater.....................................131
Engine Coolant Check.................................191
Checking the coolant level..............................191
Topping up.......................................................191
Engine immobiliser..........................................47
       Principle of Operation..............................47
Engine Oil Check..........................................190
       Checking the oil level..............................190
       Topping up.............................................190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V
       Ti-VCT (Sigma).........................................190
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi
       (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW)
       Diesel....................................................190
Exterior Mirrors.............................................72
       Manual folding mirrors..........................72

F
Fastening the seat belts.................................29
       C-MAX...................................................29
       Grand C-MAX.........................................31
Fast forward/reverse..................................232
First Aid Kit...............................................173
Floor Mats......................................................126
Fog Lamps - Front
       See: Front Fog Lamps...............................58
Fog Lamps - Rear
       See: Rear Fog Lamps.................................58
Front Fog Lamps...........................................58
Fuel and Refuelling.....................................136
       Technical Specifications........................139
Fuel Burning Heater
       See: Auxiliary Heater..............................106
Fuel Consumption......................................138
Fuel Consumption
       See: Technical Specifications..................139
Fuel filler flap..............................................137
       Refuelling with a fuel can........................138
Fuel Quality - Diesel................................136
       Long-term storage..................................136
Fuel Quality - Petrol................................136
Fuse Box Locations....................................174
       Engine compartment fuse box.................174
       Load compartment fuse box.....................174
       Passenger compartment fuse box.............174
Fuses............................................................174
Fuse Specification Chart..........................175
       Engine compartment fuse box...............175
       Load compartment fuse box....................180
       Passenger compartment fuse box.............178

G
Gauges..........................................................77
       Engine coolant temperature gauge...........78
       Fuel gauge.............................................78
Gearbox
       See: Transmission....................................141
General Information on Radio
       Frequencies............................................36
Glasses Holder.............................................124
Global Opening and Closing......................45
       Global closing.........................................46
       Global opening........................................46

H
Handbrake
       See: Parking Brake..................................144
Hazard Warning Flashers..............................59
Headlamp adjustment
       See: Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With:
           Adaptive Front Lighting/Xenon
           Headlamps..........................................59
Headlamp Levelling.....................................59
       Recommended headlamp levelling switch
       positions................................................59
Headlamp Washers........................................54
Head Restraints..........................................110
       Adjusting the head restraint....................110
       Removing the head restraint.....................111
Heated Seats.............................................120
Index

Heated Windows and Mirrors..........................105
Heated exterior mirrors..................................105
Heated windows.............................................105

Heating
See: Climate Control..................................100

Hill launch assist (HLA)
See: Using hill start assist..............................146
Hill Start Assist.............................................146
Principle of Operation..................................146

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes..............144

HLA
See: Hill Start Assist..................................146
See: Using hill start assist..............................146

Ignition Switch...........................................127

Immobiliser
See: Engine immobiliser.................................47

Important audio information..........................219
Audio unit labels............................................219
Disc labels...................................................219

Information Displays.....................................83
General Information......................................83

Information Messages.....................................90
Airbag..........................................................90
Alarm..........................................................91
Battery and charging system............................91
Blind spot monitor.........................................91
Child power lock.........................................92
Doors open.................................................92
Engine immobiliser.......................................93
Hill start assist............................................93

Keyless entry..................................................93
Lighting.......................................................94
Maintenance..................................................95
Message indicator........................................90
Power steering.............................................96
Stability control (ESP)...................................96
Starting the engine.......................................96
Start–stop......................................................97
Transmission...............................................97
Tyre pressure monitoring system....................99

Instrument Cluster.......................................77
Instrument Lighting Dimmer...........................122

Interior Lamps..............................................61
Ambient lighting...........................................61
Interior lighting..........................................61

Introduction.....................................................7

iPod connection
See: Connecting an external device.................258
See: Connecting an external device - Vehicles With: Bluetooth.....................258

iPod
See: Using an iPod.........................................260

ISOFIX Anchor Points.....................................24
Attaching a child seat with top tethers..................25
Top tether anchor points - All vehicles..............24
Top tether anchor points - C-MAX.....................24
Top tether anchor points - Grand C-MAX.............25

Jump starting
See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle......................197
Jump-Starting the Vehicle..............................197
To connect the booster cables.........................197
To start the engine........................................198

Keyless Entry...............................................43
Disabled keys..............................................45
General information......................................43
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade.................45
Locking the vehicle......................................43
Passive key...................................................43
Unlocking the vehicle..................................44

Keyless Starting..........................................129
Failure to start............................................130
Ignition on...................................................129
Starting a diesel engine..............................129
Starting with automatic transmission................129
Starting with manual transmission...................129
Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving.................130
Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary..............130

Keys and Remote Controls.............................36

287
Lighting Control ............................. 57
Headlamp flasher .............................................. 57
Home safe lighting .............................................. 58
Lighting control positions .................................. 57
Main and dipped beam ...................................... 57
Parking lamps ........................................................ 57
Lighting ............................................................... 57
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.............165
Load Carrying..................................................161
General Information..........................................161
Loading the navigation data...........................271
Loading the navigation data...........................071
Locking and Unlocking.................................39
Double locking.......................................................39
Locking.....................................................................39
Locking and unlocking confirmation..............40
Locking and unlocking the doors from inside................................................................... 40
Locking the doors individually with the key............................................................... 42
Luggage compartment lid................................40
Sliding door............................................................40
Unlocking................................................................ 39
Locks...................................................................39
Luggage Anchor Points.....................................161
Luggage Covers.............................................163

Manual Seats....................................................109
Adjusting the angle of the seatback..............110
Adjusting the height of the driver's seat...............................................................110
Adjusting the lumbar support........................110
Moving the seats backwards and forwards...................................................................109
Manual Transmission........................................141
Map updates.......................................................278
Message Centre
See: Information Displays.................................83
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors..............105
See: Windows and Mirrors...............................71
MP3 connection
See: Connecting an external device.............258
See: Connecting an external device - Vehicles
With: Bluetooth.............................................258
MP3 display options........................................233
CD text display options....................................234
MP3 file playback............................................233
Playing a multi session disc...............................233

Navigation introduction....................................262
General Information..........................................262
Navigation Quick start.......................................264
Vehicles with CD-SD navigation system or Sony CD-SD navigation system..............265
Vehicles with mobile navigation system.................................................................264
Navigation system.............................................275
Navigation unit overview..................................267
Vehicles with CD-SD navigation system..............268
Vehicles with Sony CD-SD navigation system.............................................................270
News broadcasts..................................................230

Occupant protection.........................................27
Principle of Operation.........................................27
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check...............................190
On/off control.......................................................227
Index

Opening and Closing the Bonnet.......185
Closing the bonnet............................186
Opening the bonnet............................185

P

Parking Aids........................................148
Principle of Operation........................148
Parking Brake.....................................144
Parts and Accessories........................7
Look for the Ford logo on the following
parts .....................................................8
Now you can be sure that your Ford parts
are Ford parts...........................................7
Personalised Settings..........................89
Chime deactivation.............................90
Language setting..................................89
Measure units....................................90
Temperature units.............................90
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking................39
Power Seats........................................111
Power Windows....................................71
Anti-trap function................................71
Driver's door switches......................71
Global opening and closing................71
Opening and closing the windows
automatically.......................................71
Resetting the memory of the electric
windows.................................................72
Safety switch for rear windows.............71
Programming the remote control........36
Programming a new remote control........36
Reprogramming the unlocking
function...............................................36

R

Rear Fog Lamps.................................58
Rear Seats.........................................112
Second row seats - C-MAX....................112
Second row seats - Grand C-MAX...........117
Third row seats - Grand C-MAX.............119
Rear Under Floor Storage....................163
Rear view camera..............................155
Principle of Operation.........................155
Rear Window Wiper and Washers..........53
Intermittent wipe..............................53
Rear window washer..........................54
Reverse gear wipe.............................54
Refuelling...........................................138
Regional mode (REG)..........................231
Remote control battery
See: Changing the remote control
battery.......................................................36
Remote control programming
See: Programming the remote control.....36
Removing a Headlamp..........................62
Repairing Minor Paint Damage............196
Repeat compact disc tracks.................232
Type 1....................................................232
Type 2 and 3.........................................232
Retractable tow ball...........................168
Driving with a trailer.........................171
Maintenance........................................171
Swivelling the tow ball in...................169
Swivelling the tow ball out................170
Road Safety.........................................262
Safety information................................263
Roadside Emergencies.......................173
Roof Racks and Load Carriers..............165
Installing the crossbars......................165
Roof rack.............................................165
Route displays...................................276
Junction zoom...................................276
Map display.......................................276
Navigation display..............................276
Route options menu...........................275
Driver...............................................275
Dynamic.............................................275
Eco settings.......................................275
Ferry/motorail....................................275
Motorway............................................275
Route................................................275
Seasonal roads....................................276
Toll....................................................275
Toll sticker.......................................276
Running-In.........................................172
Brakes and clutch..............................172
Engine...............................................172
Tyres...............................................172

289
Index

S

Safety Precautions........................................136
Satellite Navigation Unit Holder.......................126
Adjusting the holder........................................126
Seat belt height adjustment.............................33
Seat belt reminder.........................................33
Deactivating the seat belt reminder......................33
Grand C-MAX only............................................33
Seat belts
See: Fastening the seat belts..........................29
Seats.................................................................109
Security code..................................................226
Shuffle/random..............................................232
Type 1...............................................................232
Type 2 and 3....................................................232
Seating in the Correct Position.........................109
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.................................208
Sound button..................................................227
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control........................................158
Speed Limiter................................................160
Principle of Operation.....................................160
Stability Control............................................145
Principle of Operation.....................................145
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch.........................................127
Starting a Diesel Engine...............................128
Cold or hot engine.........................................128
Starting and Stopping the Engine......................127
General Information........................................127
Starting a Petrol Engine.................................128
Cold or hot engine.........................................128
Engine idle speed after starting.......................128
Flooded engine...............................................128
Start-Stop..........................................................133
Principle of Operation.....................................133
Station preset buttons....................................228
Station tuning control.....................................227
DAB service linking.......................................227
Manual tuning...............................................227
Scan tuning....................................................227
Seek tuning.....................................................227
Steering Wheel Lock.......................................127
Vehicles with keyless starting.........................127
Vehicles without keyless starting.....................127
Steering Wheel.............................................50
Storage compartments.................................124
Rear storage compartment.............................124
Sun Shades....................................................121
Roof...............................................................121
Side windows...............................................121
Switching Off the Engine...............................131
Vehicles with a turbocharger..........................131
Symbols Glossary...........................................7
Symbols in this handbook.............................7
Symbols on your vehicle................................7
System settings.............................................272
Audio settings...............................................273
Clock settings...............................................274
Menu structure - Information and
entertainment display - All vehicles..............273
Menu structure - Information and
entertainment display - Vehicles with
navigation system........................................272

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications..................216
Telephone commands.................................249
Create a phonebook....................................252
Main settings...............................................253
Phone.............................................................249
Phone functions..........................................250
Telephone controls.....................................238
Remote control.............................................238
Telephone setup.............................................237
Bond another Bluetooth phone........................238
Making a phone an active phone.....................238
Phonebook.....................................................237
Phonebook categories.................................238
Telephone........................................................237
General Information.....................................237
Telephone
See: Using the telephone................................238
Towing a Trailer.............................................168
Steep gradients.............................................168
Towing Points...............................................183
Installing the towing eye..............................183
Towing eye location......................................183
# Index

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels........................................................... 183
All vehicles............................................................ 183
Vehicles with automatic transmission.................................................... 184
Towing.............................................................. 168
Track selection.............................................. 232
Type 2 and 3......................................................... 232
Traffic information control................................................................. 228
Activating traffic announcements....................................................... 228
Ending traffic announcements......................................................... 229
Traffic announcement volume......................................................... 229
Traffic Message Channel................................................................. 277
Principle of Operation................................................................. 277
Transmission................................................................. 141
Trip Computer................................................. 89
Average fuel consumption............................................................... 89
Average speed.............................................................. 89
Distance to empty............................................................... 89
Instantaneous fuel consumption....................................................... 89
Odometer............................................................... 89
Outside air temperature.............................................................. 89
Resetting the trip computer......................................................... 89
Trip Odometer............................................................... 89
Type approvals................................................................. 279
Certificate for United Arab Emirates.................................................... 281
EU Declaration................................................................. 280
FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE................................................................. 279
RX-42 - declaration of conformity....................................................... 279
Tyre Care................................................................. 207
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System....................................................... 208
System reset................................................................. 209
Tyre Pressures
See: Technical Specifications............................................................ 209
Tyre Repair Kit................................................................. 204
Checking the tyre pressure............................................................... 206
General information................................................................. 204
Inflating the tyre............................................................................. 205
Using the tyre repair kit................................................................. 204
Tyres
See: Wheels and Tyres................................................................. 199

Under Bonnet Overview - 2.0L
Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel................................................................. 189
USB port................................................................. 125
USB
See: Using a USB device......................................................... 259
Using active park assist............................................................... 152
Using an iPod................................................................. 260
Audio control................................................................. 261
Operation................................................................. 260
Using a USB device............................................................... 259
Audio control................................................................. 260
Operation................................................................. 259
Using Cruise Control................................................................. 158
Cancelling the set speed............................................................... 158
Changing the set speed............................................................... 158
Resuming the set speed............................................................... 159
Setting a speed............................................................................. 158
Switching cruise control off........................................................... 159
Switching cruise control on............................................................ 158
Using Eco mode................................................................. 135
Resetting Eco mode............................................................... 135
Using hill start assist................................................................. 146
Activating the system................................................................. 146
Deactivating the system............................................................... 146
Vehicles with manual transmission only.................................................. 146
Using seat belts during pregnancy..................................................... 33
Using Snow Chains................................................................. 208
Vehicles with stability control (ESP)................................................... 208
Using Stability Control................................................................. 145
Using start–stop........................................................................... 133
To re-start the engine................................................................. 134
To stop the engine........................................................................ 133
Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With:

- Front and Rear Parking Aid........................................................... 149
- Manoeuvring with the parking aid................................................... 150
- Switching the parking aid on and off................................................. 149
Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With:

- Rear Parking Aid................................................................. 148
Using the Rear View Camera.......................................................... 155
Activating the rear view camera....................................................... 155
Deactivating the rear view camera..................................................... 157
Using the display............................................................................ 157
Vehicles with parking aid............................................................... 157
Using the speed limiter..............................160
Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit..........................160
Setting the speed limit.....................................160
Switching the system on and off.................160
System warnings................................................160
Using the telephone...................................238
Changing the active phone........................... 240
Debonding a bonded phone......................... 240
Making a call....................................................239
Muting the microphone.................................. 240
Receiving an incoming call.................................. 240
Receiving a second incoming call...............240
Using TMC.......................................................277
Ending traffic announcements......................277
Traffic announcement......................................277
Using TMC messages....................................... 277
Using voice control.......................................241
Name tag.............................................................. 242
System operation...............................................241
Using Winter Tyres......................................208

V

Vehicle battery..............................................197
Vehicle Care..............................................195
Vehicle Identification Number...............215
Vehicle Identification Plate................214
Vehicle identification................................214
Vehicle recovery...........................................183
Ventilation
  See: Climate Control...............100
Vents
  See: Air Vents.............................................100
VIN
  See: Vehicle Identification Number...........215
Voice control..............................................241
Voice control..............................................241
Voice Control................................................51

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.................79
  ABS warning lamp........................................79
  Airbag warning lamp....................................79
  Blind spot monitor indicator...............79
  Brake system lamp......................................79
  Cruise control indicator....................79
  Direction indicators................................79
  Engine warning lamp................................79
  Front fog lamp indicator.....................80
  Frost warning lamp....................................80
  Glow plug indicator....................................80
  Headlamp indicator.....................................80
  Ignition warning lamp..............................80
  Low fuel level warning lamp......................80
  Low tyre pressure warning lamp...............80
  Main beam indicator..................................80
  Message indicator..........................................80
  Oil pressure warning lamp.......................80
  Rear fog lamp indicator............................80
  Seat belt reminder.........................................80
  Stability control (ESP) indicator.............81
  Start-stop indicator........................................81
Warning Triangle........................................173
Washer Fluid Check....................................192
Washers
  See: Wipers and Washers....................52
Washing
  See: Cleaning the Exterior......................195
Waveband button......................................227
Wheels and Tyres....................................199
  General Information.....................................199
  Technical Specifications.....................209
Windows and Mirrors...............................71
Windscreen Washers.................................53
Windscreen Wipers..................................52
  Automatic wiper system...............................52
  Intermittent wipe..........................................52
Winter Tyres
  See: Using Winter Tyres......................208
Wipers and Washers.................................52
  Technical Specifications.....................56